

mr salah abdelsalam

NEW HELLO!

3rd PREP

FIRST TERM

الصف الثالث الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

2022

العام والأزهري

طبقا لآخر تعديل في نسخة الكتاب المدرسي

دار غـزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Contents



Part 1



A Writing Skills مهارات الكتابة

Learn how to answer the questions that require a skill

تعلم كيف تجيب عن الأسئلة التى تتطلب مهارة

1) Dialogues المحادثات

المحادثة هى السؤال الأول فى الامتحان وهى عبارة عن حوار نكمله باتباع الآتى:

١- نقرأ الموقف المذكور قبل المحادثة جيدًا لفهم عما يدور الحوار.

٢- نقرأ المحادثة كلها قبل الحل لفهم الموضوع ومحاولة تخمين الأسئلة والإجابات.

٣- التركيز فى زمن المحادثة والحرص على استخدام نفس زمن الإجابة فى تكوين السؤال.

٤- الأفضل أن تكون الإجابة مختصرة.

٥- اقرأ الحوار مرة أخرى بعد الحل للتأكد من أن إجاباتك مناسبة.

Model question نموذج السؤال كما يأتى فى الامتحان

Complete the following dialogue:

مطلوب من الطالب أن ينهى محادثة بها خمس فراغات إما بأسئلة أو بردود.. قبل المحادثة هناك موقف مشروح باختصار:

Magid meets a tourist at the Egyptian Museum.

Magid : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from?

Tourist : I'm from the USA.

Magid : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : No, ❶ ....

Magid : ❷ ....?

Tourist : Because I enjoy its fine weather and great monuments.

Magid : ❸ ....?

Tourist : I have been here for two weeks.

Magid : ❹ ....

Tourist : At the Sheraton.

Magid : ❺ ....

Tourist : Thank you.

الفراغ رقم (١)

- قد يكون الفراغ إجابة لسؤال قبلها كالآتى:

Magid: Is this your first visit to Egypt?

- السؤال هنا يبدأ بـ (Is) وهو فعل مساعد ويعطى معنى «هل» والإجابة إما أن تكون بـ Yes, ... أو بـ No, ...
- وفى المحادثة السابقة سنلتزم بالإجابة بالنفى لأن الفراغ بدأ بـ No, ...

Tourist: No, it isn't. / No, this is my second visit.

الفراغ رقم (٢)

قد ينتهى الفراغ بعلامة استفهام يليه إجابة ونراعى عند تكوين السؤال أن يكون فى نفس زمن الإجابة غالبًا مع اختيار كلمة الاستفهام المناسبة:

Tourist: Because I enjoy its fine weather and great monuments.

- الإجابة هنا تبدأ بـ (Because) أى تعبر عن «سبب» فلابد أن نسأل عن هذا السبب بكلمة الاستفهام (لماذا Why).
- نأخذ جزء من الإجابة «إن وجد» لتكوين السؤال مع الحفاظ على زمن الإجابة فى السؤال «مضارع بسيط»

Magid: Why do you visit Egypt?

- وسوف نقدم شرحًا مفصلاً لكلمات الاستفهام وكيفية تكوين السؤال لاحقًا.

الفراغ رقم (٣)

نموذج آخر لإجابة تحتاج إلى تكوين سؤال:

Tourist: I have been here for two weeks.

- الإجابة هنا تعبر عن "مدة"، وزمن الإجابة مضارع تام.
- نسأل عن المدة بكلمة الاستفهام (How long) مع استخدام نفس الزمن فى تكوين السؤال.

Magid: How long have you been here?

الفراغ رقم (٤)

- مطلوب سؤال بمعنى (أين تقيم .....؟).
- فتكون الاجابة:

Magid: Where are you staying?

الفراغ رقم (٥)

- مطلوب عبارة الرد عليها بـ (Thank you.).
- من موضوع المحادثة نفهم أن Magid يتمنى وقتًا سعيدًا للسائح فيمكن أن تكون الإجابة كالآتى:

Magid: Have a nice time.

كيفية تكوين السؤال

ينقسم السؤال إلى نوعين:

1 السؤال بـ (هل......؟) Yes / No question

- إذا اشتملت الإجابة على Yes, / Of course, / Sure, / No, نبدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد أو ناقص ويكون معناه «هل...؟».

الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة تعد جزءاً أساسياً في تكوين أي سؤال:

Helping verbs الأفعال المساعدة	Modals الأفعال الناقصة
am - is - are - was - were	can - could - shall - should - will would
have - has - had	- may - might - must

- إذا كان بالجملة أي من الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة السابقة نستخدمه غالبًا في السؤال كالآتي:

A Can you speak English?
B Yes, I can speak English.

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص نستخدم do / does / did حسب زمن الجملة.

A Do you play tennis?
B Yes, I play tennis.

A Does she speak English?
B Yes, she speaks English.

A Did she go to school?
B Yes, she went to school.

2 السؤال بكلمة استفهام Wh-question

- نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام في السؤال عن (مكان - زمان - شخص - شيء - طريقة ....)

A **Where** is your father working?
B My father is working in his office.

Question words

What	ما/ماذا (للأشياء)
Where	أين (للمكان)
Who	من (للأشخاص)
Whose	لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)
When	متى (للزمن)
Why	لماذا (للسبب)
Which	أيهما (للتخيير)
How	كيف (للطريقة/للحال)
What class	ما الصف الدراسي

What time	ما الوقت
What colour	ما لون
What age	ما عمر
What subject	ما المادة الدراسية
How many	كم العدد
How long	ما المدة/كم طول
How heavy	ما وزن
How much	ما ثمن/كم كمية
How often	كم عدد المرات



لاحظ الآتى

1 إذا كان الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة (have - has - had) يعامل مثل أى فعل آخر باستخدام do - does - did .

A When does he have lunch?
B He has lunch at 2 o'clock.

A When do you have lunch?
B We have lunch at 5 o'clock.

2 إذا كان الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة (do - does - did) يعامل مثل أى فعل آخر.

A When does Mum do her housework?
B Mum does her housework in the morning.

A When did Sama do her homework?
B Sama did her homework an hour ago.

3 عند السؤال عن الفاعل: نحذف الفاعل ونضع كلمة الاستفهام مكانه ونكمل الجملة:

A **What** caused the accident?
B **A horse** caused the accident.

A **Who** helps you?
B **Ahmed** helps me.

- أما عندما نسأل عن المفعول نكوّن السؤال بالطريقة المعتادة باستخدام الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة بعد كلمة الاستفهام.

A **Who** did you meet?
B I met **Munir**.

4 السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام (How much / How many)

- يأتى بعدهما مباشرة الاسم الذى نسأل عنه ثم الفعل المساعد/الناقص ثم الفاعل..

A **How many books** did you buy?
B I bought 5 **books**.

A **How much flour** have you got?
B I have got **a lot of flour**.

5 السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام [Whose]

- يأتى بعدها غالبًا الاسم المراد السؤال عن ملكيته:

A **Whose book** is that?
B That is **Ali's book**.

Common questions

أسئلة شائعة فى المحادثات

1- At a restaurant
في مطعم

- Can I have your order, sir?
- What's your favourite dish?
- What about the dessert?

2- At a hospital or a doctor's
فى مستشفى أو عيادة

- What's the matter with you?
- What do you complain of?
- How long have you been smoking?

3- At a clothes shop
فى محل بيع الملابس

- Can I help you?
- What colour / size do you want?
- How much does it cost?

4- At a hotel
فى فندق

- Can I book a room, please?
- How long will you stay here?
- How much is the room a night?
- Have you enjoyed your stay here?

5- At a railway station
فى محطة سكة حديد

- Can I book a ticket to ...., please?
- Which platform does it leave from?
- How long does it take to go there?
- When will it arrive?

6- Meeting a tourist
مقابلة سائح

- Where do you come from/ Where are you from?
- Is it your first visit to Egypt?
- What places have you been to?
- How can I get to the Pyramids?

General questions

1- What do you do? / What is your job?	للسؤال عن الوظيفة
2- Where were you born?	للسؤال عن مكان الميلاد
3- When were you born?	للسؤال عن تاريخ الميلاد
4- What is your nationality?	للسؤال عن جنسية شخص
5- Where do you live?	للسؤال عن عنوان شخص
6- What is the weather like? / How is the weather?	للسؤال عن الطقس
7- What does .... look like?	للسؤال عن مظهر إنسان/وصف شيء.
8- What is/are .... (used) for?	للسؤال عن الغرض من استخدام شئ/أشياء
9- Single or double?	للسؤال عن نوع غرفة في فندق
10- What would you like to have?	للسؤال عن ماذا يريد شخص أن يأكل / يشرب
11- Where have you been?	للسؤال أين كان شخص
12- How often do you ....?	للسؤال عن عدد المرات
13- What happened?	للسؤال عن ما حدث
14- What is your opinion of ...?	للسؤال عن رأي شخص في شيء/شخص
15- What is wrong with ....?	للسؤال عن عطل في جهاز

Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed meets an English tourist.

Ahmed : Welcome to Egypt.

Tourist : Thanks a lot

Ahmed : Where do you come from?

Tourist : ❶ ....

Ahmed : ❷ .... ?

Tourist : I'm going to visit Giza and Luxor.

Ahmed : ❸ .... ?

Tourist : I'll stay here for a week.

Ahmed : Where are you staying?

Tourist : ❹ ....

Ahmed : ❺ ....

Tourist : Thank you.

2 Situations المواقف



نموذج السؤال كما يأتى فى الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

➤ **Write what you would say in each of the following situations:**

- مطلوب من الطالب أن يجيب عن ثلاث مواقف (**situations**) فى الورقة الامتحانية كالآتى:

1 ماذا ستقول أنت فى الموقف

- إذا بدأ السؤال بـ (You) واحد الأفعال الآتية فهذا معناه أنك أنت الذى تقول الموقف على لسانك:

You	meet	تقابل	leave	تغادر	ask	تسأل
	want	تريد	say	تقول	think	تعتقد

- لاحظ أنه عندما يقول السؤال (You are asked) فهذا معناه أن شخص ما يسألك والمطلوب منك الرد.

2 الرد على الموقف

- أما إذا بدأ السؤال بـ (Your ...) أو (Someone) واحد الأفعال الآتية فهذا معناه أنك سترد على الموقف:

Your friend / father Someone	requests - suggests - advises - apologises - thanks - congratulates

Examples

1. You ask your friend about his age.
   - "How old are you?"
2. Your friend asks you about your age.
   - "I'm twelve years old."
3. You apologise to your teacher for coming late.
   - "I'm sorry."
4. Your sister apologises to you for losing your mobile.
   - "Oh! That's bad, but don't worry."
5. You thank your brother for the nice present he has given you.
   - "Thanks."
6. Your uncle thanks you for your help.
   - "Not at all."
7. You want to know your friend's opinion about a match.
   - "What is your opinion about the match?"
8. Your friend wants to know your opinion about a match.
   - "It's very exciting."

9. You are asked about your address.
- "I live at 15 Thawra Street, Giza."

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your friend asks you about your favourite hobby.

2. You ask your friend about his favourite sport.

3. Your brother apologises for breaking your camera.

4. You thank your uncle for his help.

5. You apologise to your teacher for making a noise.

3) Rewrite أعد كتابة



نموذج السؤال كما يأتى فى الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

مطلوب من الطالب أن يعيد كتابة ثلاث جمل معطاه له فى ورقة الامتحان باستخدام الكلمة أو الكلمات المُعطاه له بين القوسين بشرط أن يحافظ على معنى الجملة.

1. I met an old friend last month. (ago)
- I met an old friend a month ago.
2. Mohanad and Mazen are of the same age. (as .... as)
- Mohanad is as old as Mazen.

• يلاحظ أننا نحذف الجزء الذى يتفق فى المعنى مع الكلمة المطلوب استخدامها.

- هناك جزء خاص بالتدريب على هذا السؤال بعنوان (Drills on Rewrite) داخل كل وحدة.

Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. They got up early, so they caught the school bus. (because)

2. You should have a rest. (If I were you,..)

3. Let's watch TV now. (What about)

4. I advise you to do sports. (should)

4) Read and correct the underlined word: كيف تجيب عن سؤال إقرأ وصحح

- السؤال عبارة عن أربع جمل على القواعد اللغوية والمرادفات بكل جملة خطأ واحد.
- مطلوب من الطالب تصويب الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط.



نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Read and correct the underlined word:

1- I'd like **<u>any</u>** orange juice, please.

2- Listen! She **<u>sings</u>** a beautiful song.

3- Cairo is **<u>noisiest</u>** than Al Fayoum.

4- How **<u>much</u>** cups of coffee do you drink a day?

5- Your house is small. **<u>Our</u>** is big.

6- **<u>Didn't</u>** come late.

- وإليكم نموذج لحل هذا السؤال:

1- some

2- is singing

3- noisier

4- many

5- Ours

6- Don't

5) How to write a paragraph كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

- مطلوب من الطالب كتابة فقرة(واحدة فقط)مكونة من حوالى ١١٠ كلمة عن موضوع معين (متعلق بالكتاب المدرسى)

تعليمات مهمة للطالب بخصوص الشكل العام للفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph):

1. نترك مسافة صغيرة (تعادل كلمة صغيرة) فى أول سطر فقط.
2. ابدا أول كل جملة بحرف كبير (capital letter) واضح، وضع نقطة (full stop) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة. اكتب بخط واضح - الجملة بجوار الجملة - واترك مسافة بين الكلمة والأخرى.
3. اكتب جملًا قصيرة مكوّنة من (فاعل + فعل + تكملة) لتجنب الأخطاء.
4. استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (v / v + s, es, ies) عند الحديث عن الحقائق والعادات، وزمن الماضى البسيط ((v + d / ed / ied) عند الحديث عن موضوع فى الماضى، وزمن المستقبل (will + inf.) عند الحديث عن موضوع فى المستقبل.
5. يمكن أن يكون عنوان الموضوع جملة تستخدم كأحد الجمل فى الكتابة.

Common writing mistakes

أخطاء شائعة في الكتابة باللغة الانجليزية

وهذه أمثلة من الأخطاء التى يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب

1 Definite and indefinite articles (a, an and the)

1. نستخدم (a - an) عندما نتحدث عن شيء للمرة الأولى في الجملة.

- I go to the school, close to the sports club. — الجملة خطأ ✗
- I go to **a** school, close to **a** sports club. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

2. نستخدم (the) عند التحدث عن شيء سبق ذكره.

- I stayed in a hotel near the station. A hotel was very nice. — الجملة خطأ ✗
- I stayed in a hotel near the station. **The** hotel was very nice. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

3. نستخدم (the) عند الإشارة الى شيء معروف للجميع.

- Do you know an answer to a question? — الجملة خطأ ✗
- Do you know an answer to **the** teacher's question? — الجملة صحيحة ✓

4. لا نستخدم أدوات عندما نتحدث بشكل عام باستخدام صيغة الجمع مع الاسم الذى يُعد، أو صيغة المفرد مع الاسم الذى لا يُعد.

- The oranges give us vitamins. — الجملة خطأ ✗
- **Oranges** give us vitamins. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

5. يجب أن توضع (the) أمام أسماء الدول المركبة:

- I live in United States. — الجملة خطأ ✗
- I live in **the** United States. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

2) Punctuation

أمثلة من أخطاء الترقيم التي يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب:

1. تستخدم الحرف الكبير (Capital letter) في الكتابة في الحالات الآتية:

- الضمير (I) في أي مكان في الجملة.

الجملة خطأ ✗
- i go to school early.

الجملة صحيحة ✓
- I go to school early.

- الحرف الأول من الكلمة الأولى في الجملة الخبرية أو السؤال.

- my brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but i came back at 2 p.m.

الجملة خطأ ✗

- My brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but I came back at 2 p.m.

الجملة صحيحة ✓

- الحروف الأولى من أسماء الأشخاص والدول والمدن والمعالم والأماكن الشهيرة والجنسيات واللغات والاختصارات والألقاب والعناوين وأيام الأسبوع والشهور والمؤسسات والمهرجانات.

- maged did his Homework and watched tv. — الجملة خطأ ✗
- Maged did his homework and watched TV. — الجملة صحيحة ✓
- i can speak english and french well. — الجملة خطأ ✗
- I can speak English and French well. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

2. توضع النقطة Full stop (.) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية و الأمرية.

3. توضع الفاصلة Comma (,) لتعبر عن توقفات موجزة في الجمل وبين كلمات في قائمة وبعد No/ Yes ولا يترك مسافة قبل الفواصل عمومًا.

- After I ate I went to sleep — الجملة خطأ ✗
- After I ate, I went to sleep. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

4. توضع الفاصلة العليا Apostrophe (') قبل (s) الملكية للاسم المفرد، بينما نضع (') للملكية للجمع المنتهي بـ (s):

- We met at Ali party. — الجملة خطأ ✗
- We met at Ali's party. — الجملة صحيحة ✓
- These are the boys toys. — الجملة خطأ ✗
- These are the boys' toys. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

- توضع الفاصلة العليا في الاختصارات مثل: **let's - don't - it's ... etc**

- I dont have a car. — الجملة خطأ ✗
- I don't have a car. — الجملة صحيحة ✓

5. توضع علامة الاستفهام Question mark (?) في نهاية السؤال.

- Do you have a car — الجملة خطأ ✗
- Do you have a car? — الجملة صحيحة ✓

6. توضع علامة التعجب Exclamation mark (!) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية مثل النقطة لإظهار الدهشة والتعجب.

- what a pity — الجملة خطأ ✗
- What a pity! — الجملة صحيحة ✓

3 Common grammatical mistakes

1. للتعبير عن شيء يحدث باستمرار في حياتنا نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر كما نفعل في اللغة العربية

- I'm often going to the club on Fridays. الجملة خطأ ✗
- I often go to the club on Fridays. الجملة صحيحة ✓

2. احرص على وضع ظروف التكرار (Adverbs of frequency) في مكانها (قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد فعل be):

always - usually - often - sometimes - never ...

- I go usually to the cinema on holidays. الجملة خطأ ✗
- I usually go to the cinema on holidays. الجملة صحيحة ✓
- He always is early for school. الجملة خطأ ✗
- He is always early for school. الجملة صحيحة ✓

3. يأتي دائمًا بعد حروف الجر فعل مضافًا له (ing):

- I thanked Ali for help me. الجملة خطأ ✗
- I thanked Ali for helping me. الجملة صحيحة ✓

4. بعض الأفعال لا يأتي بعدها حرف جر مثل (enjoy) حيث أن معناه يستمتع بـ:

- I enjoyed by the film. الجملة خطأ ✗
- I enjoyed the film. الجملة صحيحة ✓

5. تذكر أن بعض الكلمات مثل (information / news / equipment) يأتي بعدهم فعل لفاعل مفرد:

- The information you gave me were important. الجملة خطأ ✗
- The information you gave me was important. الجملة صحيحة ✓

6. الأفعال الناقصة لا يأتي بعدها (to):

- We must to eat healthy food. الجملة خطأ ✗
- We must eat healthy food. الجملة صحيحة ✓

7. لا نستخدم (that) بعد (should / must):

- You should that study your lessons. الجملة خطأ ✗
- You should study your lessons. الجملة صحيحة ✓

8. عليك أن تفرق بين استخدام (It's / Its):

- It's = (It is + n / adj / V-ing)

- It's (It is) my book.
- It's (It is) good to be fit.
- It's (It is) raining heavily.

• Its ضمير ملكية لغير العاقل

• I have a nice cat. Its tail is long.

5 عليك أن تميز في الاستخدام بين ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول:



• Samir and me revised for the exam.

• Samir and I revised for the exam.



نموذج السؤال كما يأتي في الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

The advantages and disadvantages of the internet

• وإليكم نموذج لحل هذا السؤال

Nowadays almost everyone in the world has a computer. A great part of them has been using the international computer's net known as the "The Internet". Using the internet has advantages and disadvantages. First of all, the internet provides us with a lot of information. It can be very useful in jobs and hobbies. If you search the internet, you can find everything you want. You can also do shopping using the internet. You can learn languages on it. The internet has some disadvantages too. People who spend too much time sitting in front of computers can easily get ill. This may be harmful to their eyes. They also have no real friends. It also can waste their time.

6) How to write an email كيف تكتب رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

• مطلوب من الطالب كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني (واحدة فقط) مكونة من ١١٠ كلمة عن موضوع معين (متعلق بالكتاب المدرسي) معطى له في ورقة الامتحان. على الطالب ذكر عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه والراسل بالإضافة إلى موضوع الرسالة.

تعليمات مهمة للطالب بخصوص الشكل العام لرسالة البريد الالكتروني (email):

1 ١- نكتب أعلى الصفحة جهة اليسار:

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل
Subject : الموضوع

2 نكتب أسفل منهم [اسم المرسل إليه + Dear] يليها فاصلة [,].

3 أسفل كلمة [Dear] نكتب مقدمة مناسبة.

4 نكتب محتوى رسالة البريد الالكتروني [يمكنك أحياناً الاستعانة بجمل من السؤال نفسه مع مراعاة تحويل الضمائر].

5 نكتب خاتمة مناسبة.

6 ننهي رسالة البريد الإلكتروني بـ [Yours,] وأسفل منها اسم الراسل.



نموذج السؤال كما يأتى فى الامتحان مع الاجابة النموذجية

Write an email of about 110 words:

To your English pen friend, Tim, telling him about your favourite hobby and where you practise it.

- **Your name is Ziad and your email address is ziadsamir@yahoo.com.**
- **Your pen friend's email address is tim505@yahoo.com.**

• وإليكم نموذج لحل هذا السؤال:

New Message

To : tim505@yahoo.com Cc Bcc

From : ziadsamir@yahoo.com

Subject : My favourite hobby

Dear Tim,

I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you? (المقدمة)

I want to tell you that I like playing football. It's my favourite hobby. I practise it every day in the club near my house. I joined that club when I was three. My father knew I was a good player, so he let me join it. I go there with my friends twice a week. I usually score goals for my team. I hope I will join a European club in the future. I hope I will be famous like Mohamed Salah. My coach always encourages me to train hard. Please, tell me about your favourite hobby. I'm waiting for your email. (الموضوع)

Goodbye. / With my best wishes. / Write soon.

Yours,

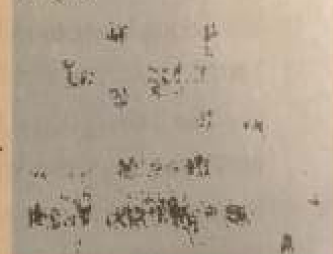
Ziad (الخاتمة)

Send

Part 2

Scope & Sequence

Module 1: Where I live

Skills	Language	Life Skills, Values and Issues
1 Around town		Page 2
Reading: A description of Ismailia; maps, posters and timetables; accounts of forms of transport; a botanical garden's brochure; an email about meeting a friend Writing: A fact file; a short text about your city; a reply to an email; a text invite Listening: Giving and following directions; people talking about their city; a discussion at a train station; making suggestions for a day out Speaking: Giving directions; talking about your city or village; discussing timetables and public transport; making suggestions	**Prepositions of time and place (revision)** *On Friday afternoon, I often go to Lake Timsah.* *I have tennis lessons at the sports centre at 9 am.* **The present simple for scheduled events** *What time does the exhibition start?* *The first metro train leaves at 8.20.* *The film starts at nine o'clock.*	Life Skills: Decision making: respect for diversity Issues: Citizenship: loyalty
2 Let's go shopping		Page 12
Reading: An online support message; an advert for handicrafts; online reviews Writing: Emails asking for and giving information about handicrafts; an online review Listening: A radio advert; a conversation in a shop; a phone call making a complaint Speaking: Speaking about things in the home; buying something in a shop; asking about shopping habits; describing a problem with technology; making a complaint	**The comparative and superlative (revision)** *Televisions are more expensive than kettles.* *The most useful thing in my kitchen is the fridge.* *It is better to buy clothes in shops than online.* **both either, neither** *I want to buy both a drink and a snack.* *We can get either a free speaker or a free film.* *Neither Fares nor Emad can come to the beach.*	Life Skills: Resilience: keeping calm Values: Self-esteem: independence Issues: Citizenship: awareness of rights 
3 My community		Page 22
Reading: An article about a plan to help people; a community social network page; *David Copperfield*; an online message about a community project Writing: An article about how to help people; a social network message about a community problem; a survey about your community Listening: A conversation about a community survey; a discussion at a community meeting; people greeting and introducing each other Speaking: Describing communities and community problems; using formal and informal introductions and greetings	**Present continuous for future plans and arrangements (revision)** *We're starting a project next month.* *They're discussing this problem at the next community meeting.* **Going to for future plans and intentions (revision)** *We're going to start our own social network service.* *The street is going to be closed on Saturday.* **Adjectives ending in -ing or -ed** *The handball match was exciting.* *I am excited to watch the match.*	Life Skills: Respect for diversity; participation; responsible behaviour Values: Coexistence: acceptance of others; participation; respect Issues: Citizenship: loyalty and belonging; Issues of globalisation: digital citizenship; Discrimination Issues: discrimination against the elderly, women, children and people with special needs
Review A Revision of Units (1-3)		Page 32

Module 2: Young people

Skills	Language	Life Skills, Values and Issues
4 Have you ever flown a plane?		**Page 34**
Reading: A report about experiences; texts about life experiences: *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer and The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*; a text about someone's life Writing: A story about something that happened in your life; a timeline of a person's life events; a biography of a person Listening: An interview about someone's life; an account of something bad that happened to someone Speaking: Talking about experiences; asking and asking questions about experiences; telling a story	**The past simple (revision)** Last year, I visited Cairo. *We moved to the city three years ago.* ***The present perfect with ever or never*** *Have you ever been to a football match?* *They have never travelled by plane.* **The present perfect with for and since** *We've been married for over 50 years.* *They've known each other for a long time.*	Life Skills: Communication Values: Work ethics Issues: National unity
5 Young role models		**Page 44**
Reading: A text about a business person; a biography of a friend; an article about a sports tournament; a biography of a tennis player Writing: A description of someone's job; a paragraph about a tournament or a competition; a biography of a role model Listening: A conversation about a role model; an interview with an inventor; a conversation sharing good news Speaking: Describing jobs; talking about sports tournaments; responding to good news	**The past simple and the present perfect (revision)** *Sami passed his exams last week.* *I have visited lots of interesting cities in my country.* **The present perfect with yet and already** *She hasn't been to another country yet.* *Has she learned a musical instrument yet?* *She's played in two concerts already.*	Life Skills: Respect for diversity Values: Transparency and honesty; safely give and receive feedback Issues: Issues of globalisation: leading role models
6 What's wrong?		**Page 54**
Reading: An online problem page; a blog about a problem; a news article about mindfulness; a case study about a problem Writing: A response to a blog; an email, apology; a poster helping people with mental health Listening: A conversation about teenage problems; a discussion about mindfulness; people talking about and responding to problems Speaking: Discussing teenage worries; showing that you are listening; suggesting solutions to problems	**must / mustn't; have to / don't have to; should / shouldn't; might (revision)** *Friends must keep secrets.* *I have to be good at science subjects.* *You don't have to see this as a negative thing. You should talk to them.* *They might be more understanding than you think.* **had to / didn't have to, was / wasn't able to, could / couldn't** *I had to tell my parents. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested. I was able to say sorry to Fawzi.* *They couldn't understand why I did it.*	Life Skills: Empathy Values: Objectivity: good listening to others; Self-esteem and coexistence Issues: Health and population Issues: therapeutic health, preventative health
Review B Revision of Units (4-6)		**Page 64**

Check Your English!

WB pages 70 & 71

1 Complete the questions with these words:

a lot of - how to - if - located - mustn't - quietly - used to - which

1. What mustn't you do in an exam?
2. What should you do .... you feel ill at school?
3. What do you call someone who knows .... paint very well?
4. Which city is .... on the Suez Canal?
5. Who .... think that an animal's eye helped blind people?
6. What fast food has .... fat in it?
7. What do you call the material .... people often use to make clothes?
8. In which building do people usually sit and read ....?

2 Now match the questions from Exercise 1 with the answers:

a	☐	cotton	☐	e	a library
b	☐	the Ancient Egyptians	☐	f	pizza
c	☐	talk loudly	☐	g	You should tell the teacher.
d	☐	Port Said	☐	h	an artist

Listening

Narrator : 1
Speaker 1 : What mustn't you do in an exam?
Speaker 2 : (c) talk toudy.
Narrator : 2
Speaker 1 : What should you do if you feel ill at school?
Speaker 2 : (g) You should tell the teacher.
Narrator : 3
Speaker 1 : What do you call someone who knows how to paint very well?
Speaker 2 : (h) an aritst.

Narrator: 4
Speaker 1 : Which city is located on the Suez Canal?
Speaker 2 : (d) Port Said.
Narrator: 5
Speaker 1 : Who used to think that an animal's eye helped blind people?
Speaker 2 : (b) the Ancient Egyptians.
Narrator: 6
Speaker 1 : What fast food has a lot of fat in it?
Speaker 2 : (f) pizza.
Narrator: 7
Speaker 1 : What do you call the material which people often use to make clothes?
Speaker 2 : (a) cotton.
Narrator: 8
Speaker 1 : In which building do people usually sit and read quietly?
Speaker 2 : (e) a library.

3 Listen and check your answers to Exercises 1 and 2.

4 Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences. Correct the mistakes:

1. As we walk into the museum, we saw lots of old statues.
   As we were walking into the museum, we saw lots of old statues.
2. My sister bought a cotton, new, pretty dress.
   ----
3. Tarek wants the blue shoes, but I prefer the brown one.
   ----
4. Look at those dark clouds! I think it is raining soon.
   ----
5. Hundreds of fish caught by the fishermen every week.
   ----

5 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**



1 **In the foreground, I can see some shops. There is a man selling clothes on the right.**

2 A: Good morning. How can I help you?
B: Hello. Can you tell me what time the museum opens?
A: Of course. It opens at 9 am.
B: Can I buy tickets there?
A: Certainly or you can buy them online.

3 **Beat two eggs in a bowl with a little milk. Add some salt. Pour the eggs into a frying pan and cook them in a little butter. When it is ready, serve it with salad.**

4 A: Hi, Leila. I was wondering if you would like to watch a film at my house this evening?
B: Thanks, Sara. What time should I come?
A: About seven.
B: Shall I bring anything?
A: Could you bring some orange juice?
B: Of course. See you later.

5 A: Can I help you?
B: Yes, I like this red dress. Could I try it on?
A: Of course. The changing room is there.
B: Does it fit?
A: No. Do you have a smaller size?
B: We don't have smaller red dresses, but we have a smaller one in blue.
A: Thanks. I'll take it.

1. The boy is ....
   a describing a photo
   b selling clothes
   c going to the shops
   d buying something

2. The man is ....
   a buying tickets at a museum
   b helping a woman
   c asking for information on the phone
   d describing a visit to a museum yesterday

3. The woman is ....
   a making a salad
   b eating lunch
   c saying how to make a salad
   d saying how to make an omelette

4. Sara is ....
   a cooking food for Leila
   b inviting Leila to her house
   c making a film
   d going to Leila's house this evening

5. The woman in the shop ....

a buys a red dress
b wants a larger dress
c doesn't buy a dress
d buys a blue dress

6 Read the text, then answer the questions:

What clothes do you like to wear? Most people can choose the clothes that they wear each day, but in some jobs you must wear special clothes. For example, firefighters must wear clothes that are made of special material that does not burn. If you are a doctor, you should sometimes wear special clothes and masks that stop you from becoming ill. Many other people, such as engineers and builders, must wear hats and big boots when they are working.

1. What is different about the clothes firefighters wear?

   They are made of a special material that does not burn.

2. How do the clothes that doctors wear help them?

   ....

3. What do engineers and builders often wear?

   ....

4. Why do you think they wear these clothes?

   ....

5. In which other jobs do people wear special clothes, and why?

   ....

7 Write in your notebook about a person with a great job.

- What makes this job special?
- Why do you think the person does this job?
- Say if you would like to do this job and why.



Where I live

UNIT 1 Around town

Objectives

Reading:
A description of Ismailia; maps, posters and timetables; accounts of forms of transport, a botanical garden's brochure; an email about meeting a friend

Writing:
A fact file, a paragraph about your city; a reply to an email

Listening:
Giving and following directions; people talking about their city; a discussion at a train station; making suggestions for a day out

Speaking:
Giving directions; talking about your city or village; discussing timetables and public transport; making suggestions

Language:
The present simple for scheduled events

Life Skills:
Decision making; respect for diversity

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2-5 WB pages 72-73

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى كراسة التسميع

Key Vocabulary

restaurant	مطعم	café	مقهى (كافيه)
library	مكتبة (للقراءة واستعارة الكتب)	market	سوق
museum	متحف	sports centre	مركز رياضي
aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية	station	محطة
bank	مصرف/بنك	monument	أثر «تاريخى»
lake	بحيرة	traffic	المركبات فى حركة المرور
botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية	especially	خصوصًا/خاصة

Prepositions of place

next to	بجوار	opposite	مقابل
in front of	أمام	behind	خلف
near	بالقرب من	above	فوق
under	تحت		

Giving Directions

turn right / left	ينعطف يميناً / يساراً	go straight on	يسير بشكل مستقيم
walk past......	يسير ماراً بـ	take the second road	يسلك الطريق الثاني
on the right / left	على اليمين / اليسار	on the corner	على الناصية

Noun		Adjective	
care	حرص	careful	حريص
help	مساعدة	helpful	متعاون
peace	هدوء - سلام	peaceful	هادئ - مسالم
use	استخدام	useful	مفيد



Vocabulary

ruins	آثار / أطلال	perhaps	ربما
famous	مشهور	attractive	جذَّاب
modern	حديث	pollution	التلوث
building	مبنى	around	حول/ حوالي
boring	ممل	historical	تاريخي
beach	شاطئ	How far.....?	كم المسافة....؟
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	shopping centre	مركز تسوق
since	لأن	reach **(ed)**	يصل إلي
squash	لعبة الاسكواش		

Cities and Famous Places

Port Said	محافظة بورسعيد	the Natural Science Museum	متحف العلوم الطبيعية
Ismailia	محافظة الإسماعيلية	Lake Timsah	بحيرة التمساح
Suez	محافظة السويس	Suez Canal	قناة السويس

Words & Meanings

peaceful	هادئ	calm and quiet
traffic	المركبات فى حركة المرور	the cars, lorries, motorbikes, etc. that use a road
monument	أثر «تاريخي»	something that people build to remember[1] an important person or event
lake	بحيرة	a large area of water with land around it
botanical gardens	حدائق نباتية	a large park or open area[2] where scientists study plans and trees, which people can visit
especially	خصوصاً	more than usual
station	محطة	you can catch a train from here

Arabic Meaning
١- يتذكر
٢- منطقة

Expressions & Prepositions

go **straight** ahead	سر للأمام بشكل مستقيم	interested **in**	مهتم بـ
take a road	يسلك طريق	**at** the sports centre	في المركز الرياضي
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	good **at**	جيد فى
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	run **through**	يمر خلال
there is much **to do**	يوجد الكثير لنقوم به	**by** bus	بالأتوبيس

look like	يبدو مثل/يشبه	on the lake	في البحيرة
have tennis lessons	يأخذ دروس في التنس	on the road	على الطريق
come home	يعود للمنزل	see you soon	اراك قريبًا

Word Differences

pollution	التلوث	population	تعداد السكان
road	طريق	rude	وقح
straight	بشكل مستقيم	street	شارع
right	يمين	write	يكتب

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
take	يأخذ/يسلك	took	taken
go	يذهب	went	gone
run	يجري/يمر	ran	run
do	يفعل	did	done
come	يأتي	came	come
win	يفوز	won	won

Language Notes

1 (which / where) for places

- **where** تستخدم كضمير وصل يشير إلي المكان بمعني (حيث)

Ex. This is the school where I learn.

- **which** تستخدم كضمير وصل يشير إلي المكان بمعني (الذي/التي) عندما نشير إلي المكان كشئ

Ex. I live in Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez.

2 good at - good for - good to

- **good at** جيد في

Ex. Sara is good at painting.

- **good for** مفيد لـ

Ex. Fresh vegetables are good for you.

- **good to** طيب مع

Ex. My dad is good to our neighbours.

3) get to / reach / arrive in / arrive at

- **get to** تستخدم بمعنى (يصل إلى) ويليها المكان المقصود

Ex. The tourists got to the airport at 8 o'clock.

- **reach** تستخدم بمعنى (يصل إلى) ويليه المكان المقصود مباشرة بدون حرف جر

Ex. We reached London late at night.

- **arrive in** تستخدم بمعنى (يصل إلى مكان كبير) مثل (مدينة/عاصمة/دولة)

Ex. Hassan arrived in Paris yesterday.

- **arrive at** تستخدم بمعنى (يصل إلى مكان صغير نسبياً) مثل سينما، مسرح.... الخ

Ex. The girls arrived at the zoo early in the morning.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I visited Alex _______ my dad was born.
   a which b where c when d what
2. The family _______ the station at nine.
   a arrived b got at c reached d came
3. Exercise is good _______ your body.
   a at b for c out d away

Tapescript نصوص الاستماع SB Page (3)

Mona: Hello Dalia. I'm at the library. Where are you?
Dalia: Hi Mona. I'm next to the station(1). How do I get to the library?
Mona: It's easy. From the station, go straight on(2).
Dalia: How far?
Mona: For about twenty metres.
Dalia: OK. Do I get past the sports centre(3)?
Mona: Yes, but then turn left.
Dalia: OK.
Mona: Walk past the botanical gardens(4).
Dalia: I'm walking past them now.
Mona: Great. After the botanical gardens, turn right(5).
Dalia: Turn right after the botanical gardens! OK!
Mona: Then take the second road on the right. Can you see a restaurant(6)?
Dalia: I think I can see it. It's on the corner(7).
Mona: Walk past the restaurant. The library is between the restaurant and the museum, opposite the bank.
Dalia: Thanks, Mona. See you soon.

Arabic Meaning
١- محطة
٢- سر بشكل مستقيم
٣- مركز رياضي
٤- حدائق نباتية
٥- انعطف يمينًا
٦- مطعم
٧- على الناصية

SB Page (5)

Nader : My name is Nader. I live in Alexandria with my mum, my dad and my two brothers. Alexandria is a very historical(1) city with lots of famous buildings, ruins(2) and monuments(3), but it's a modern city, too. And there are lots of things to do here.
At the weekend, I like to spend time with my family. On Friday afternoons, we usually go to the park. But sometimes we go to a museum or to the aquarium*(4). I love watching the fish. On Saturdays, I visit my grandparents. They live in Alexandria, too. I enjoy playing chess with my granddad. He's very good at it but sometimes I win.

Judy : My name is Judy and I live in Aswan. It's a busy city with about one and half million people and there's always a lot to do at the weekend.
On Friday mornings, I sometimes go shopping. Aswan is a great place for this. There are lots of interesting shops and I love going to the famous market. I also like to go to the botanical gardens or the nature reserve(5).
On Saturdays, I do my homework and in the afternoon, I go to the sports centre for my squash lesson. It's my favourite sport.

Arabic Meaning
١- تاريخي
٢- أطلال
٣- آثار
٤ - متحف أحياء مائية
٥ - محمية طبيعية

Say it correctly
*aquarium — square
ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت a في كلمة




New Message

I am Sherif and I live in Ismailia, which is between(1) Port Said and Suez. The Suez Canal(2) runs through the city before it reaches(3) the sea.
Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive(4) buildings(5), interesting monuments and lots of gardens. Around(6) 350,000 people live here, but since traffic(7) is slow, there isn't much pollution(8).
Ismailia is peaceful(9), but it isn't boring! There are lots of things to do here, especially(10) at the weekends. On Friday afternoons, I often go to Lake Timsah(11), which is near the city, with my family. It's a beautiful lake with beaches around it.
On Saturday mornings, I have tennis lessons at the sports centre at 9 am. Sometimes I go swimming in the afternoon with my friend, Sayed.
There are some interesting museums in Ismailia! My favourite is the Natural Science Museum(12) because I'm interested in(13) animals. It's a good place to go at the weekend.






Arabic Meaning
١- بين
٢- قناة السويس
٣- يصل إلي
٤ - جذاب
٥ - مباني
٦ - حوالي
٧ - المركبات في حركة المرور
٨ - تلوث
٩- هادئ
١٠- خصوصاً
١١ - بحيرة التمساح
١٢- متحف العلوم الطبيعية
١٣- مهتم بـ

WB Page (73)

I live in a small village in the south of Egypt. At the weekend, I usually do the same things. On Saturdays, I get up at 7 am, then I always do my homework after breakfast. At lunchtime, I visit my cousins. We like to eat together. Then, in the afternoon, I often play games with my cousins. What do you do?

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ________________ which we visited had great paintings from the past.
   a museum b sports centre c aquarium d bank
2. We used to go a/an ________________ where we could go to play many types of sports.
   a aquarium b library c museum d sports centre
3. It's really noisy in Cairo, but it is very ________________ here in Ismailia.
   a messy b far c peaceful d terrible
4. He is good at many subjects ________________ English and maths.
   a awfully b terribly c especially d loudly
5. Can you see all those boats on the __________? WB
   a air b lake c sky d floor

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Tourists like watching the ancient **moments** at Luxor. (______________)
2. We can watch beautiful kinds of sea animals in **a bank**. (______________)
3. I need to go to the **sports centre** to get some money. (______________)
4. I like going to the **bookshop** to borrow the books I like. (______________)

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The travellers went to the .... to take the bus to Helwan.
   a station b museum c sports centre d aquarium
2. There's a nice .... next to the bank. You can find very good drinks there.
   a station b café c aquarium d theatre
3. My children are really interested .... reading science books.
   a on b of c in d with
4. Scientists can study plants and trees in .... gardens.
   a metal b black c botanical d white
5. Yesterday, I took my family out for dinner in a rice ....
   a aquarium b theatre c restaurant d station
6. You can borrow the books you like from the nearby ....
   a library b bank c restaurant d café
7. The Suez Canal runs .... the city before it reaches the sea. SB
   a over b for c after d through
8. This machine does many things. It is very .... WB
   a careful b useful c helpless d useless
9. Please be .... when you carry those eggs. WB
   a careless b careful c peaceful d helpless
10. The park is very ..... in the morning. You can only hear the birds singing. WB
   a noisy b terrible c peaceful d careful

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Mum always goes shopping in the nearby **museum**. (.............)
2. There were many travellers at the train **statue**. (.............)
3. I like everyone in the class, **socially** Magid. (.............)
4. **A:** How can I go to the museum? **B:** You should turn **write** at the bank. (.............)



Prepositions of time and place حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت والخاصة بالمكان

1- Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

Preposition	Use	Example
in في	١- قبل شهور السنة	in May
	٢- قبل فصول السنة	in winter
	٣- قبل السنين	in 1999
	٤- قبل العقود والقرون	in the 1900s in the 21st century
	٥- قبل أجزاء اليوم المسبوقة بـ the	in the morning
	٦- قبل تعبيرات زمنية معينة بمعنى (في خلال)	in three days in five minutes
at في	١- قبل وقت محدد	at 9 o'clock
	٢- قبل كلمات وتعبيرات معينة	at night
		at noon
		at the weekend
		at lunchtime
		at dinnertime
		at the moment
		at present
		at the same time
		at dinner
		at breakfast
		at lunch
		at the age of.......
on في	١- قبل أيام الأسبوع	on Monday
	٢- قبل التواريخ	on 10th November
	٣- عندما نذكر يوم يليه جزء من اليوم	on Tuesday morning
	٤- قبل كلمة holiday	on holiday
	٥- قبل تعبيرات معينة	on time
for لمدة	- قبل فترة مذكور مدتها	for three hours

2- Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

Preposition	Use	Example
at عند	١- قبل العناوين	at Althawra Street
in في	١- قبل المدن والدول والقارات	in Giza in Egypt in Europe.
	٢- قبل وسائل المواصلات التي لا يمكن الحركة فيها إذا سبقها أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو ضمير ملكية	in a taxi in a car
on على	١- قبل الاسطح	on the bed
	٢- مع تعبيرات معينة	on the left on the right on the corner
	٣- مع وسائل المواصلات التي يمكن الحركة فيها إذا سبقها أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو ضمير ملكية	on the bus on the train



- لا يستخدم حروف الجر (in/on/at) قبل كلمات مثل (last/next/every/this/all):

Ex. We travelled abroad last month.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I usually get up .... six o'clock.
   a on b in c at d of
2. We always go to school early .... the morning.
   a on b in c to d for



Drills تدريبات

Rewrite جزء لتدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

1) The bank is in front of the botanical gardens. (behind)

- لاستخدام (behind) لابد أن تقوم بتبديل طرفي الجملة للحفاظ على المعنى لأنها عكس in front of في المعنى.

The botanical gardens are behind the bank.

2 We go to school in a car. **(by)**

تستخدم in مع وسائل المواصلات التى لا يمكن الحركة فيها إذا سبقها أداة نكرة أو معرفة بينما تستخدم by بدون فواصل :

We go to school by car.

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... Tuesday afternoon, I often go out.
   a At b On c In d For
2. I have tennis lessons at the sports centre .... 9 am. SB
   a for b with c at d on
3. Sometimes I go swimming ...... the afternoon. SB
   a in b from c at d on
4. They are waiting for you ...... the bus station.
   a over b at c from d with
5. Nagwa usually visits her grandparents ...... the weekend.
   a in b about c at d for SB

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Mona is in front of Sara. (Sara)
   ....
2. We travelled to Tanta by bus. (on)
   ....
3. The screen is behind the box. (front)
   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. We visited the museum **in** Monday morning. (..............)
2. We usually go out **in** night. (..............)
3. The café is **in** the corner of the street. (..............)
4. The sports centre is **in front** to the aquarium. (..............)

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Are you going to the museum .... Saturday?
   a in b on c at d for SB
2. I had lots of fun .... my birthday.
   a in b on c with d at
3. We walk to school .... the morning, but we come home by bus. SB
   a under b to c for d in
4. Ahmed saw very big fish .... the water.
   a next b under c for d beside
5. I always go to the park .... Saturday mornings. SB
   a in b on c out d from
6. It's a good place to go .... the weekend.
   a in b for c at d with
7. The shopping centre is .... the station. WB
   a from b in front c between d opposite
8. I moved to Giza .... the age of two.
   a at b on c for d with
9. The bus will leave .... a few minutes.
   a at b with c on d in
10. They got married ....Friday the 13th.
   a on b in c at d with

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The botanical gardens are close to the museum. (near)
....
2. The went to Assiut by taxi. (in)
....
3. The bank is opposite the cinema. (in front of)
....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. **<u>In</u>** Tuesday mornings, we have an English lesson. (...........)
2. I always go shopping **<u>on</u>** the afternoon. (...........)
3. The zoo is **<u>on</u>** the café and the bus station. (...........)
4. Mona usually plays video games **<u>for</u>** the weekend. (...........)
5. The museum is **<u>between</u>** the botanical gardens. (...........)

Language Functions

Giving directions

وصف الطريق والاتجاهات

– تستخدم العبارات الآتية لوصف الطريق والاتجاهات:

1- From ___________ go straight on for about ___________ metres.
– من ______ سر بشكل مستقيم لمسافة ___________ متر.

Ex. From the sports centre, go straight on for about 20 metres.

2- Take the ___________ road on the left / right.
– اسلك الطريق ___________ على اليسار / اليمين.

Ex. Take the first road on the left / right.

3- Go past the ___________ and the ___________ and then turn ___________.
– سر مارًا بـ___________ و___________ ثم انعطف ___________.

Ex. Go past the botanical gardens and the aquarium and then turn left.

4- Go past the ------ and the ------ . The ---- is on the ----, opposite ----.
– سر مارًا بـ______ و______ الـ______ على الـ______ أمام ______.

Ex. Go past the restaurant and the library. The museum is on the left, opposite the zoo.

Exercises on Language Functions

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A tourist is talking to a policeman.

Tourist : Could you help me, please?

Policeman : ❶ ....

Tourist : How can I get to the museum?

Policeman : ❷ ....

Tourist : ❸ .... ?

Policeman : No, it isn't very far.

Tourist : Can I go there on foot?

Policeman : ❹ ....

Tourist : ❺ .... ?

Policeman : It takes about ten minutes to reach there.

Tourist : Thank you very much.

2 **Write what you would say in each of the following situations:**

1. You are at the bank. Someone asks you how they can go to the nearest restaurant.

---

2. You are at a sports centre. A friend asks how he can go to the aquarium.

---

3. A fiend asks how he can go to the library. You think he should go past the botanical gardens to get there.

Writing

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

"Your city"

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **In which city do you live? Where is it?**
- **Is your city interesting? Why?**
- **What about the traffic?**
- **What places can you go to in your city?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I live in ....**
- **There are attractive buildings and ....**
- **There is/isn't a lot of traffic so there is/isn't much pollution.**
- **There are lots of things to do here.**
- **My favourite place is .... because ....**

Lessons

3 & 4

SB pages 6-8 WB pages 74-75

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى كراسة التسميع

Key Vocabulary

map	خريطة	platform	رصيف محطة قطار
exhibition	معرض	passenger	راكب
valley	وادي	electric	كهربّ
space	فضاء	floor	طابق (بمبني - بوسيلة مواصلات)
timetable	جدول مواعيد		

Means of transport

tram	ترام (قطار قصير يسير داخل الشوارع)	bus	أتوبيس
train	قطار	metro	مترو الانفاق
ferry	عبّارة/معدية		

Words, phrases & opposites

Words and phrases		Opposite meaning	
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
easy to use	سهل الاستخدام	difficult to use	صعب الاستخدام
fast	سريع	slow	بطئ
good for the environment	جيد للبيئة	polluting	ملوِث للبيئة
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
peaceful	هادىء	noisy	مزعج

Vocabulary

Science Museum	متحف العلوم	energy	طاقة
journey	رحلة	rails	قضبان السكة الحديد
engineering works	أعمال هندسية	part	جزء
railway	السكة الحديد	transport	وسائل النقل
type	نوع	including	مشتملاً على
guard	حارس	objects	أشياء
central	مركزي	cross (ed)	يعبر
special	مميز/خاص	end (ed)	ينتهي

Continents & places

Edfu	مدينة ادفو	Sydney	مدينة سيدنى باستراليا
Africa	قارة افريقيا	Bondi	شاطئ بوندى باستراليا

Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic	Meaning
metro	مترو الانفاق	You can use this to travel in a city, sometimes it travels underground[1]
comfortable	مريح	making you feel relaxed[2]
passenger	راكب	someone who is travelling on a plane, train, etc and is not driving it
platform	رصيف	the area in a station where you get on or off a train
timetable	جدول مواعيد	- You can use this to find when a train or bus leaves - a list of times or dates that show when something will happen
tram	ترام	a form of transport that uses rails[3] like a railway to travel along roads, usually in cities
valley	وادي	an area of land between two hills[4] or mountains
ferry	معدية	a form of transport that carries people or cars across water
exhibition	معرض	a place where people can go to see paintings[5], photographs, etc.
map	خريطة	You can use this to follow directions[6]

Arabic Meaning

١- تحت الارض
٢- مستريح
٣- قضبان السكة الحديد
٤- تلال
٥- رسومات
٦- الاتجاهات

Expressions & Prepositions

Expression	Arabic
the journey takes	الرحلة تستغرق ..
get / take a train	يستقل قطار
see you later	أراك لاحقا
sit at the top	يجلس علي القمة
use energy	يستخدم طاقة
catch a train	يلحق بقطار
follow directions	يتبع الاتجاهات
come to	يأتي إلى

Preposition	Arabic
look forward to + V-ing./n.	يتطلع إلي
leave from	يغادر من (رصيف ...)
get back	يعود
look out of.....	ينظر خارج من
travel around	يسافر حول
on a train	علي متن قطار
travel on railway	يسافر بالسكة الحديد
such as	مثل
by metro / train	بالمترو/بالقطار

Word Differences

Word	Arabic	Word	Arabic
space	الفضاء	spice	تابل (من التوابل)
passenger	مسافر	messenger	رسول/مبعوث
fun	متعة/ممتع	funny	مضحك
way	طريقة/طريق	weigh	يزن
electric	كهربيّ	electronic	اليكتروني
top	قمة	tap	صنبور (حنفية)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
show	يبين/يعرض	showed	showed / shown
leave	يغادر/يترك	left	left
sit	يجلس	sat	sat



1) see - hear - feel

يأتى بعد هذه الأفعال مفعولاً ثم فعل مضاف له (ing) أو فعل فى المصدر مع اختلاف المعنى كما يلى :

see / hear / feel + object مفعول + v-ing

عند استخدام v-ing بعد المفعول فهذا معناه أن الفاعل رأى/سمع/شعر بجزء من الحدث.

Ex. I saw Ahmed carrying a heavy box.

see / hear / feel + object مفعول + inf.

عند استخدام مفعول يليه فعل بالمصدر بعد هذه الأفعال فهذا معناه أن الفاعل قد رأى أو سمع أو شعر بالحدث كاملاً.

Ex. I saw the boys play football.

2) platform - pavement

- **platform** رصيف محطة (المكان المخصص لركوب القطار)

Ex. My train leaves from platform 6.

- **pavement** رصيف شارع (المكان المخصص للمشاة)

Ex. I was waiting for the bus on the pavement.

3) trip - picnic - journey - voyage - flight

- **trip (n)** رحلة قصيرة

Ex. We went on a school trip to the Egyptian Museum.

- **picnic (n)** نزهة فى الهواء الطلق

Ex. We're going to have a picnic by the River Nile.

- **journey (n)** رحلة طويلة

Ex. I love going on long journeys.

- **voyage (n)** رحلة بحرية

Ex. It was the first voyage for the young sailor.

- **flight (n)** رحلة جوية

Ex. Hot-air balloon flights are really exciting.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The train leaves from _______ 6.
   a carriage b pavement c platform d single
2. He went to the tourist company to book a _______ to London.
   a picnic b flight c trick d platform
3. Yesterday, we saw Mahmoud _______ in my street.
   a walks b walked c walking d to walk



SB Page (6)

Khaled : Hi Fawzi. Would you like to come to the Space Exhibition(1)* tomorrow? My dad is taking me.

Fawzi : Yes, please! What time does it start?

Khaled : It starts at 9.30. We're going by metro(2).

Fawzi : Which train shall we get?

Khaled : The first metro train leaves at 8.20 and arrives at 8.30.

Fawzi : That's an hour before the exhibition starts!

Khaled : Perhaps(3) we can leave later.

Fawzi : What time does the exhibition finish?

Khaled : It finishes at 2 pm.

Fawzi : OK. Can we get a train in the afternoon to get back?

Khaled : Yes, one leaves at 1.15 pm and arrives at 1.25 pm.

Fawzi : Great! Let's take that.

Arabic Meaning

١- معرض الفضاء
٢- مترو الأنفاق
٣- ربما

Say it correctly

*exhibition h ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (اكس) مع عدم نطق

SB Page (8)

I love travelling by train because it's interesting[1] to look out of the window. In one journey,[2] you can see ferries[3] crossing the Nile, green valleys[4], peaceful villages[5] and busy cities. Trains are often fast and comfortable,[6] too. Egypt has the oldest railway[7] in Africa. More than 800 million passengers[8] travel by train in Egypt every year on 5,000 kilometres of railway! I take the train when I visit my grandparents in Edfu[9]. It's my favourite journey.

Riham

* * *

Lots of people in Alexandria use the tram[10] to travel around the city. It's a great way[11] to travel! It's easy to use and it isn't expensive[12]. Trams are electric,[13] so they are better for the environment[14] than other types of transport[15]. Some of the trams in Alexandria are unusual: they have two floors[16]! I like sitting at the top[17] and watching the streets below.

Hana

Arabic Meaning

١ - شيّق
٢ - رحلة طويلة
٣ - عبّارات
٤ - وادي
٥ - قرية
٦ - مريح
٧ - السكة الحديد
٨ - مسافر
٩ - مدينة إدفو
١٠ - الترام
١١ - طريقة
١٢ - غالي
١٣ - كهربّي
١٤ - البيئة
١٥ - وسائل النقل
١٦ - طابق
١٧ - قمة

WB Page (75)

Some people think that Sydney[1] in Australia has the best transport in the world Why? Because trains, buses and ferries travel to all parts of the city. Comfortable buses go to the nearest beaches such as Bondi. If you want to get somewhere quickly, fast trains leave from Central[2] Station to many places, including[3] the airport. It is quiet on the water, so ferries are peaceful and they are also easy to use[4]. It is interesting to see the famous buildings from the water, too.

Arabic Meaning

١ - مدينة سيدنى
٢ - مركزى
٣ - مشتملاً على
٤ - سهل الاستخدام



SB Page (7)

Nadia : Which train do we need for Tanta?
Mother : We need the train to Alexandria. Look! It stops at Tanta.
Nadia : Oh, yes. So the next train is at 11.30.
Mother : That's right.
Nadia : And when does it arrive?
Mother : It arrives at 1.45.
Nadia : Which platform does it leave from?
Mother : It's the Alexandria train, so it leaves from platform 7.

WB Page (74)

Man : Good morning .Where does the train to Aswan leave from?
Guard: It leaves from platform four.
Man :Thanks .What time is the next train?
Guard: The next train leaves in five minutes.
Man : Great .What time does it arrive in Aswan?
Guard: The train usually takes six hours, so the next train arrives in Aswan at about 4.30.

WB Page (74)

Good morning. This is the 11.30 train to Luxor. It leaves in five minutes. The train stops at Giza, Assiut and Qena. It doesn't stop at Al Balyana today because there are engineering works. The train arrives in Luxor at 23.15.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ____________ to Alex left from platform six yesterday.
   a rocket   b tank   c screen   d train
2. I really like that seat because it is very ____________.
   a narrow   b uncomfortable   c comfortable   d terrible
3. We went to a space ____________ where we learnt about the science of space.
   a library   b hall   c corridor   d exhibition
4. A huge ____________ can take the people to the other side of the Nile.
   a train   b tram   c ferry   d bike
5. The journey to Tanta won't take long as the train is really ____________.
   a slow   b horrible   c fast   d helpless

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. A **messenger** is someone who is travelling on a plane, or a train. (____________)
2. The opposite of "peaceful" is "**calm**". (____________)
3. We are looking forward to **meet** the manager today. (____________)

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That film is really popular because it is very ___________.
   a boring b interesting c slow d expensive
2. A ___________ takes people across water. WB
   a ferry b tram c map d floor
3. **A:** How can man travel to ___________ ? **B:** By rockets.
   a spice b spoon c stay d space
4. Aya Studies really hard. She looks forward to ___________ a doctor.
   a be b being c is d was
5. Planting a lot of trees is good ___________ the environment
   a at b on c for d out
6. I couldn't arrive at work on time because the streets were really ___________.
   a empty b wide c far d busy
7. A ___________ uses rails like a railway.
   a ferry b tram c boat d bike
8. When we didn't find any buses, we decided to ___________ the train to Tanta.
   a give b build c take d break
9. Is a ___________ between two mountains or on a mountain? WB
   B: Between two mountains.
   a star b valley c space d spice

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. We went to Ramsis **buy** metro. (___________)
2. The journey to Luxor **spent** three hours. (___________)
3. I like that new machine as it is easy **using**. (___________)
4. The buses here are amazing. They have two **flowers**. (___________)
5. You need a **mob** to know the places in an area. (___________)



Grammar

The present simple tense

Form التكوين

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → inf.مصدر الفعل
He / She / It / اسم مفرد → inf. مصدر الفعل + s / es / ies

Ex. Sara usually goes to school on time.
Ex. We always get home early.

Usage الاستخدام

١- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط ليعبر عن حقائق :

Ex. The sun rises in the east.

٢- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط ليعبر عن عادات فى المضارع ويستخدم مع الكلمات الآتية :

- always دائماً
- usually عادةً
- every كل
- often غالبًا
- sometimes احيانًا
- never ابدًا

– تذكر أن ظروف التكرار تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسى أو بعد (v. to be) .

Ex. I usually go to school on foot.
Ex. He is always late for school.

٣- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حدث فى المستقبل مرتبط بجداول مواعيد محددة مثل مواعيد الطائرات والقطارات والحافلات والسـينما والمسرح والتلفاز والامتحانات ومباريات كرة القدم وكل ما هو مرتبط بجدول مواعيد.

Ex. The train leaves at 9 p.m.
Ex. What time does your bus arrive on Saturday?

Negative النفى

• ننفى الفعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلى:

(I / You / We / They / اسم جمع) → don't + inf.
(He / She / It / اسم مفرد) → doesn't + inf.

Ex. They don't go out on Mondays.
Ex. Ali doesn't work hard.

Question السؤال

• للسؤال بـ «هل..؟» فى زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم Do / Does كما يلى:

Do + I / you / we / they / اسم جمع → inf...?
Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد → inf ....?

Ex. Do you usually watch TV after nine?
- Yes, I do. الإجابة فى الاثبات
- No, I don't. الإجابة فى النفى

Ex. Does he sometimes text his friends?
- Yes, he does. الإجابة فى الاثبات
- No, he doesn't. الإجابة فى النفى

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة السابقة مع وضع كلمة الاستفهام فى أول السؤال.

Ex. When do you get home?
- I get home at 7.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My plane .... at 7.30 in the morning.
   a leaves b leave c leaving d is leaves
2. **A:** When .... the lesson finish? **B:** Tomorrow at 10.
   a did b is c does d was
3. They usually .... at school late.
   a arrive b arrives c arriving d are arriving
4. Hassan .... rice every day.
   a eat b eats c eating d is eating
5. The science lesson .... tomorrow at 10 am.
   a start b starts c is starts d going to start



Drills

Rewrite جزء لتدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

1) When does the match start? **(is)**

من الممكن أن تستخدم (is) محل (does .... start) لتعبر عن مستقبل مرتبط بجدول مواعيد.

When is the match?

2) What time is the science lesson? **(start)**

بالمثل من الممكن أن تستخدم (does .... start) محل (is) لتعبر عن مستقبل مرتبط بجدول مواعيد.

What time does the science lesson start?

3) Mona comes late as usual. **(usually)**

لاستخدام ظرف التكرار (usually) نقوم بوضعه قبل الفعل (comes) مع حذف ما يساويه من الجملة.

Mona usually comes late.

أدرس المتساويات التالية :

as usual ⟶ usually
at all times ⟶ always

4) Omar doesn't play computer games. **(never)**

لاستخدام (never) نضعها مكان (doesn't) لأنها تساويها مع إضافة (s) إلى الفعل.

Omar never plays computer games.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The show ____________ on April 15th and finishes on May 15th.
   a starts b start c starting d is starts
2. The film ____________ at quarter to nine.
   a is finishes b finishing c finishes d going to finish
3. The library ____________ at 8.30 in the morning. SB
   a opening b open c opens d is opens
4. My uncles shop ____________ tomorrow at six.
   a is close b closed c closing d closes
5. What time ____________ the lesson start? SB
   a does b is c has d do

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. What time is the science lesson? (start)

   ....

2. Noha doesn't play music. (never)

   ....

3. When does the train to Tanta leave? (is)

   ....

4. What time is the flight to Paris? (the plane)

   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. They **doesn't** go to school on Fridays. (____________)
2. What time does your plane **leaves** on Tuesday? (____________)
3. The bank **closed** tomorrow at five. (____________)
4. Mai **always is** lazy in the morning. (____________)

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What time does the bank ___________ tomorrow?
   a open b opens c opened d opening
2. A: Hurry up! The train ___________ at 2:30. B: I'll be ready in five minutes.
   a leave b left c leaves d is left
3. The film hasn't finished. It ___________ at nine o'clock. SB
   a ends b ended c ending d was ending
4. When ___________ this plane arrive in Cairo? SB
   a does b is c was d do
5. I think the meeting will be in the hall. It ___________ at 10:00.
   a begins b beginning c began d has begun
6. Final exams ___________ next week.
   a starting b is started c starts d start
7. What does she ___________ doing at the weekend?
   a like b likes c liking d liked
8. We usually ___________ a movie on Saturday night.
   a watch b watches c watching d are watching
9. ___________ enough time to study for the test?
   a Do you have b Does you have c Do you has d Are you have
10. He ___________ French. He only speaks English.
   a doesn't speak b doesn't speaks c don't speak d isn't speaking

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. What time is the end of the film? (does)

   ....

2. Don't be late! The film is at eight o'clock. (starts)

   ....

3. They never stay up late. (don't)

   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. When **did** the train to Cairo leave? B: Tomorrow at nine. (..............)
2. The sun **never** rises in the east. (..............)
3. During the science lessons, we usually **does** experiments. (..............)
4. We often **visits** our aunt at the weekend. (..............)
5. **A:** How often **are** you go to the aquarium? **B:** Once a month. (..............)

Language Functions

Asking about travel

السؤال عن السفر

Answer	Question
Which way do you like to travel? بأى طريقة تود أن تسافر؟	I like the train because it's comfortable and it isn't expensive. أحب القطار لأنه مريح وغير مكلف. I prefer the tram. It's more fun. أنا أفضل الترام. انه أكثر متعة.

Exercises on Language Functions

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Malak is talking about the mid-year holiday in Luxor.

Hagar : ① ....?
Malak : I went to Luxor during the summer holiday.
Hagar : ② ....
Malak : By train.
Hagar : Why do you like travelling by train?
Malak : ③ ....
Hagar : Is it comfortable to travel by train?
Malak : ④ ....
Hagar : ⑤ ....?
Malak : No, train tickets aren't expensive.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are asked how you like to travel to Tanta.

....

2. You ask your friend which way he/she likes to travel.

....

3. Your friend asks you which way you like to travel to Aswan.

....

4. Your friend asks you why you prefer to travel by train.

....

Writing

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

To you friend Nadia about a visit to Tanta. SB

- Your name is Amira and your email address is amira22@yahoo.com.

- Your friend's email address is nadia55@gmail.com.

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب)

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **Where do you want to go?**
- **What time does the train leave?**
- **What time does it arrive?**
- **What is the last station that the train goes to?**
- **Which platform does it leave from?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **We are getting the first train.**
- **It leaves at .... from ....**
- **It leaves from platform ....**
- **It arrives in .... at ....**
- **I hope it will be a/an .... day.**

Lessons 5,6 & 7

SB pages 9-11 WB pages 76-78

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى كراسة التسميع

Key Vocabulary

indoors	داخل (مبنى)	pottery	أواني فخارية/فخار
jewellery	مجوهرات	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)

Vocabulary

park	متنزه/حديقة عامة	governor	حاكم/محافظ
review	رأي نقدي	El-Orman Gradens	حدائق الاورمان
online	عبر الإنترنت	Khedive Ismail	الخديوي اسماعيل
somewhere	فى مكان ما	French	فرنسى الجنسية
weekdays	أيام الاسبوع	wild	برى
lovely	جميل - محبب	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
politely	بأدب	open (ed)	مفتوح/يفتح
forest	غابة	protect (ed)	يحمى
bridge	جسر (كوبرى)	disagree (d)	يرفض
dear	عزيز	prefer (red)	يفضل

Words & Meanings

indoors	داخل (مبنى)	inside a building
jewellery	مجوهرات	pretty[1] things that people wear, such as rings[2], necklaces[3], etc.
pottery	أواني فخارية/فخار	pots[4], plates, cups, etc. that are made from clay
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	one hundred years

Arabic Meaning

١- جميل
٢- خاتم
٣- قلادة - عقد
٤- أواني

Expressions & Prepositions

make sure	يتأكد	get married	يتزوج
make lunch	تجهز الغداء	don't mind + V-ing.	لا يمانع .....
play sports	يمارس الرياضة	meet up	يتقابل
plant a forest	يزرع غابة	find out	يكتشف - يعرف
Be careful!	كن حريصاً	thank ... for	يشكر .... على
take a boat	يستقل قارب	learn about	يتعلم عن
practise English	يمارس الانجليزية		

Word Differences

park	متنزه/حديقة عامة	bark	ينبح (الكلب)
century	قرن (١٠٠ سنة)	country	بلد
hour	ساعة (٦٠ دقيقة)	clock	منبه

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
get	يُحضر/يحصل على	got	got
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
send	يرسل	sent	sent
bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
hurt	يجرح/يؤذى	hurt	hurt
become	يصبح	became	become

Language Notes

1) (would like / would prefer / would love) + to + inf.

Ex. I'd prefer to go to the sports centre.

Ex. We'd like to meet the manager now.

2) take / spend

- **take + a period of time + to + inf** يستغرق ...... لكي .....

Ex. It takes about an hour to get to Giza by car.

- **spend + a period of time + V-ing.** يقضي .... في ....

Ex. We spent three hours playing outside.

3) indoor / indoors / outdoor / outdoors

- **[indoor (adj) داخلى / outdoor (adj) خارجى] + noun**

Ex. Handball is an indoor sport.

- **indoors (adv) بداخل (مبنى) / outdoors (adv) بخارج (مبنى)**

لا تتبع هذه الكلمات بإسم.

Ex. We played football outdoors.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It took one hour ___________ the living room.
   a clean   b cleans   c to clean   d cleaning
2. I'd like ___________ fish with rice, please.
   a have   b to have   c to having   d has
3. I met my friends ___________ .
   a outdoor   b outdoors   c indoor   d door



SB Page (9)

Basel : Hi, Taha. Would you like to meet up tomorrow?
Taha : Hi, Basel. That would be great. Shall we go to the sports centre?
Basel : I'm not sure. I hurt[1] my leg, so I can't play sport at the moment.
Taha : Oh dear! Shall we go to the park, then?
Basel : Maybe. But it's a long way to walk. I'd prefer to go somewhere[2] indoors.
Taha : Oh! OK. How about the museum?
Basel : Perhaps! But it's always busy on Saturdays.
Taha : OK! So, what would you like to do?
Basel : I think it would be nice to play a computer game. The new one which let you practise[3] your English.
Taha : That sounds like a great idea. Why don't you come to my house?
Basel : I'd love to! Thanks, Taha. See you tomorrow.

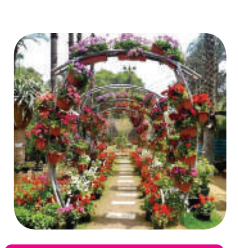
Arabic Meaning
١- يجرح
٢- مكان ما
٣- يمارس

WB Page (76)

Injy : Would you like to meet up tomorrow, Lina?
Lina : That would be great, Injy. Shall we go to the museum?
Injy : I'm not sure. I think the museum's closed tomorrow.
Lina : OK. Shall we go to the shops, then?
Injy : I'd prefer to go somewhere outside. How about the park?
Lina : I like the park, but I think it would be nice to go on a ferry on the river. Would you like to do that?
Injy : Yes, I'd love to! Why don't we meet by the bridge?



Reading SB P (10)
موضوعات القراءة



Visit El-Orman Gardens!

- Learn about how Khedive[1] Ismail asked a famous French[2] governor[3] to plant a forest[4] in the 19th century[5]
- Find out how the Orman Gardens became famous in 1910
- Learn how the garden protect[6] many important plants and trees
- See plants, trees and flowers that grow nowhere else in Egypt
El-Dokki Street, Giza

Arabic Meaning

١- خديوي
٢- فرنسي
٣- حاكم
٤- غابة
٥- قرن
٦- يحمي

SB Page (10)

New Message

Hi Azza
I am looking forward to our trip to the El-Orman Gardens! The gardens are open[1] at 9 am, and it takes about an hour[2] to get there by car. What time shall we come to get you? The online reviews[3] are fantastic. The gardens are very big and there's lots to see. Make sure[4] that you wear comfortable[5] shoes!
I'm sending you a map of the gardens. You can see wild[6] flowers and plants from all over the country. There is also a small lake[7] and a museum. What would you like to see first?
We could bring some food with us or we could go to a nearby café for lunch. What would you prefer? There is also a lovely shop near the gardens that sells pottery[8] and jewellery[9]!
See you Saturday,
Reem

Arabic Meaning

١- مفتوح
٢- ساعة زمنية
٣- رأي نقدي
٤- يتأكد
٥- مريح
٦- بريّ
٧- بحيرة
٨- أواني فخارية
٩- مجوهرات


Send

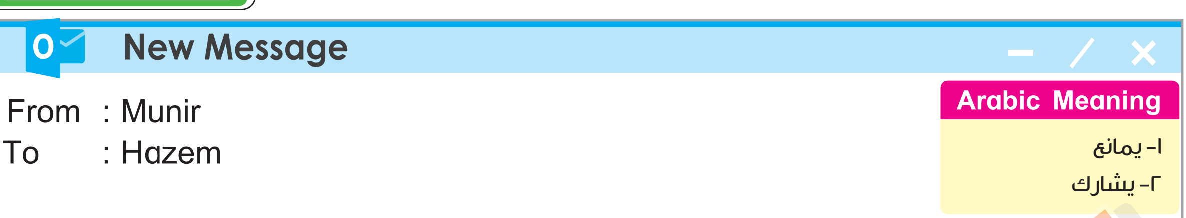




WB Page (78)

I'm Tarek and I live in a small village. On weekdays, there are two buses a day to the nearest city. The first bus is at 7 am and the second one leaves late in the afternoon. My father doesn't take the early bus because it is very slow. The traffic is always bad in the mornings. At the weekend, there is only one bus, which goes at 8 am. There is not much traffic then, so it arrives in the city at 8.30 am. There is a market in the city at this time, so I often take this bus with my mother.

WB Page (77)



New Message

From : Munir
To : Hazem

Arabic Meaning
١- يمانع
٢- يشارك

Dear Hazem
Thank you for asking me to visit the lake. I would love to go there! I will be ready at 7 am, so you can come to get me any time after that.
Yes, I have some comfortable shoes. I don't mind[1] walking round the lake. I like walking in the country.
To answer your question, perhaps we should take a boat on the lake first, before it is too hot!
My mother is going to make me some lunch to take with us, but she always makes lots. I'm sure there will be enough for us to share[2]!
See you on Saturday.
Yours, Munir



Send



Videoscript

SB Page (35)

Arabic Meaning
١- جزيرة النباتات
٢- جزيرة فيله
٣- الفلوكة (قارب صغير)
٤- متحف النوبة

Aswan is a beautiful city in the south of Egypt. The River Nile runs through the city and there are lots of things to see and do. Many people visit the Aswan Botanical Garden when they are in the city because it is very peaceful here. The garden is on El Nabatat Island[1], opposite the famous Elephantine Island[2] on the River Nile. It's open every day from 8 o'clock in the morning to five or six o'clock in the afternoon. To visit, you can go by ferry or even by felucca[3]. Another place to visit in Aswan is the Nubian Museum[4]. It is between Al-Fanadek Street and El Sadat Road. Some visitors to Aswan take a taxi to visit the museum.

You can visit the museum every day. It opens in the morning at 9 o'clock and it closes at one o'clock for lunch. It opens again at five o'clock until nine or ten o'clock in the evening.

Exercises on Lessons 5-7



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is always expensive because it is usually made of gold.
   a Pottery b Rock c Jewellery d Paper
2. The children played .... today, because it was very hot outside. WB
   a abroad b indoors c overseas d outdoors
3. The museum had useful drawings, paintings, and ....
   a butter b pottery c battery d bubble
4. El-Orman Gardens .... many important plants and trees.
   a damage b hurt c protect d remove
5. Hisham was born in 1981, which was in the last .... WB
   a week b century c day d month

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. It's so hot outside. What about going **outdoors**? (...........)
2. **Battery** is pots, plates, cups, etc. that are made from clay. (...........)
3. That museum **prevents** a lot of monuments. (...........)
4. You should **train** English inside and outside school. (...........)
5. **Make** careful! The pot is very hot. (...........)

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That shop sells good .... You can find the pots and bowls you'd like there.
   a jewellery b paper c pottery d air
2. The scientists discovered paintings from the 17th ....
   a century b market c art d country
3. You should .... sure all lights are turned off before you go to bed.
   a do b make c take d give
4. The student's first English homework was to write a book ....
   a review b paper c reason d cause
5. Ola is really rich. She wears a lot of gold ....
   a trousers b jewellery c shoes d glasses
6. I think we should all go .... and have something to drink.
   a long b across c way d indoors

2 **Read and correct the underlined word(s):**

1. Did Khedive Ismail live in the 19th **country**? (_____________)
2. Why don't we meet **down** at six? (_____________)
3. Hossam got **marry** in 2020. (_____________)
4. I don't mind **take** the bus to school. (_____________)
5. Gold and silver objects are called **pottery**. (_____________)

Language Functions

Making suggestions

الاقتراح

– لتقديم اقتراحات نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية:

1- Would you like to + inf________? هل تود أن________؟

Ex. Would you like to meet up this evening?

2- Shall we + inf________? هلا نفعل________؟

Ex. Shall we go to the swimming pool?

3- How / What about ________? ما رأيك في________؟

Ex. How / What about the park?

4- Why don't you + inf________? لم لا نفعل________؟

Ex. Why don't you come to my house?

5- It would be nice to + inf________? سيكون من اللطيف أن________؟

Ex. It would be nice to play some sport.

الرد

Agreeing الموافقة

- I'm sure. انا متأكد.

Disagreeing الرفض بأدب

- I'm not sure. لست متأكد.

Describing something you like more وصف شئ آخر تحبه اكثر

- I'd prefer to + inf. أفضل أن________.

Ex. I'd prefer to go somewhere outdoors.



Rewrite جزء لتدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

1) **What about visiting El-Orman Gardens?** (Shall)

– لاستخدام (Shall) هنا نستخدم:

Shall + فاعل + inf ....?

Shall we visit El-Orman Gardens?

2) **It would be a nice idea to go to the museum.** (Why don't)

– لاستخدام (Why don't) نستخدم:

Why don't + فاعل + inf ....?

Why don't we go to the museum?

Exercises on Language Functions

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب فى كراسة الواجب المنزلى

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy is talking to Basel.

Basel : Would you like to meet up tomorrow?
Ramy : What a good idea! 1 ....?
Basel : I'm not sure. I'd prefer to go somewhere outside.
Ramy : 2 ....?
Basel : 3 ....
Ramy : Where shall we meet?
Basel : 4 ....
Ramy : 5 ....?
Basel : We can meet at 6.
Ramy : That sounds great.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You suggest going to the sports centre with your friend.

....

2. Your friend suggests going to the aquarium and you agree.

....

3. Your brother says to you, " Shall we go to the park"? You like the idea.

....

4. Your friend suggests going to the botanical gardens. You don't like the idea.

....

Writing

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

To you friend Reem about a visit to El-Orman Gardens.

- Your name is Azza and your email address is azza19@yahoo.com.
- Your friend's email address is reem99@gmail.com. (مجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى:

- **What are your feelings about the visit?**
- **What time can they come to get you?**
- **What would you like to see first?**
- **What would you prefer to have for lunch?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I think it is very .... to go there.**
- **You can come and get me at ....**
- **I'd like to see .... first.**
- **I'd prefer to bring food with us.**

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. I think he will visit us __________ three or four days.
   a on b in c at d with
2. We are going to meet __________ .
   a next week b in next week c at next week d for next week
3. The film __________ tomorrow at eight on Channel Two.
   a is b was c had d does

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. When is the start of the party? (does)
----
2. My flight is at 8.00 o'clock. (plane)

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Ali are talking about the tram.

Judy : What do you use to travel around the city?

Omar : 1 -- .

Judy : 2 -- ?

Omar : No, it is cheap.

Judy : What type of energy do trams use?

Omar : 3 -- .

Judy : Why do you prefer the tram?

Omar : 4 -- .

2 Read and match:

A	B
1. My train	**a.** to meet up this evening?
2. Would you like	**b.** arrives at 6 in the morning.
3. I'd love	**c.** to!
4. The aquarium is	**d.** next to the museum.
5. Shall we go	**e.** to the swimming pool?

Answer 1- ------ 2- ------ 3- ------ 4- ------ 5- ------

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your city"

General Exercises on Unit 1



A Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue

Tamer is talking to Khaled.

Tamer : ❶ ....?
Khaled : I'm going to the train station.
Tamer : Why?
Khaled : ❷ ....
Tamer : Where is he coming from?
Khaled : ❸ ....
Tamer : ❹ ....?
Khaled : The train gets there at 6 o'clock.
Tamer : Can I come with you?
Khaled : ❺ ....

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your friend suggests going to the botanical gardens and you agree.

....

2. Your friend asks you which way you like to travel from Cairo to Alex.

....

3. You are at a museum. Someone asks you how they can go to the park.

....

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The boat was one of the first forms of transport. A hundred years ago, the only way to make a journey was by boat. Nowadays, it is possible to travel from a country to another by train in an hour. It is also possible to fly from one continent to another in a few hours. However, many passengers still have fun while travelling by boat. Although the boat is a rather old-fashioned way of travelling, **it** has certain advantages. The boat is usually more comfortable than a plane or a car is. Instead of staying in your seat for the whole journey on a plane or in a car, you can go for a walk on the deck, eat in the restaurant or even do shopping.

However, having more space to move around makes a long journey much more pleasant. So, you can travel by boat if you have much time.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many forms of transport are there in the passage?

----

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to?

----

3. Why do you think boats are more comfortable than planes?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. It's possible to travel from one continent to another in a few hours by ----------.
   a boat b car b bus b plane
5. The opposite of "old-fashioned" is ---------- .
   a old b ancient b modern b large
6. Although people travel by planes nowadays, some people find travelling by boats ----------.
   a enjoyable b helpless b terrible b horrible

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fruit and vegetables are cheaper in the ---------- than in the supermarket.
   a market b café c bank d museum
2. A lot of people buy that mobile because it is easy ----------
   a use b to use c using d for using
3. The tourists enjoyed seeing 6,000-year-old ---------- from Ancient Egypt.
   a screens b music c mobiles d jewellery
4. We visited Italy in July ---------- 2020.
   a on b in c at d with
5. When does the concert ----------?
   a beginning b begin c began d begins
6. He'll be in Egypt soon. His plane ---------- at 6:45.
   a arrived b arrives c arriving d is arrived
7. We had a ---------- night after the children went to bed.
   a noisy b messy c terrible d peaceful

8. Trams are .... , so they are better for the environment than other types of transport. SB

a ancient b noisy c messy d electric

9. Are you going to the museum .... Saturday? SB

a at b on c in d for

10. The restaurant .... at 06.30 tonight.

a open b opening c opens d is opens

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The bank is close to the café. (near)

....

2. Be patient! The match is at eight o'clock. (starts)

....

3. What about going to the park? (Why don't)

....

D Writing

6 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. There were about 200 **passages** on the train. (............)
2. Reading is a **useless** hobby. (............)
3. From the market, turn right and go **street** on. (............)
4. The computer shop is **over** the corner. (............)

7 Write an email of about 110 words

To you friend Alaa inviting him to an exhibition with you and your family. SB

- Your name is Maher and your email address is maher19@yahoo.com.
- Your friend's email address is alaa99@gmail.com. (مجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب)

....

....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى:

- What time does the museum start? **- Who are you going with?**
- Where will you meet? **- How will you go there?**
- What time does the bus leave? **-What time does the bus arrive?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- The museum starts on .... **- .... are going there.**
- We can meet in front of .... **- The bus leaves at ....**
- It takes .... to get there.



UNIT 2
Let's go shopping

Objectives

Reading:

An online support message; an advert for handicrafts; online reviews

Writing:

Emails asking for and giving information about handicrafts; an online review

Listening:

A radio advert; a conversation in a shop; a phone call making a complaint

Speaking:

Talking about things in the home; buying something in a shop; asking about shopping habits; describing a problem with technology; making a complaint

Language:

both/and, either/or, neither/nor, none

Life Skills:

Self-management: keeping calm

Critical thinking:

Evaluating the pros and cons of online shopping

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 12-15 WB pages 79-80

Key Vocabulary

poster	ملصق - بوستر	deal	صفقة (شراء شئ بسعر مخفض جداً)
website	موقع الكتروني	headphones	سماعات الرأس
sale	تخفيض للأسعار (أوكازيون)	speaker	مكبر صوت (سماعة)
laptop	حاسوب محمول (لابتوب)	special offer	عرض خاص
magazine	مجلة	smart	ذكي
discount	خصم - تخفيض للأسعار	television	تليفزيون

Items in the kitchen

coffee machine	ماكينة صنع القهوة	fridge	ثلاجة
kettle	غلاية	oven	فرن
microwave	جهاز ميكروويف		



Vocabulary

store	متجر - محل	delivery	توصيل
electronics	أجهزة إلكترونية	city centre	وسط المدينة
fashion	الموضة	soup	حساء (شوربة)
leisure	ترفيه	fresh	طازج
beauty	الجمال	item	عنصر (سلعة/جهاز)
customer	زبون	lucky	محظوظ
sales assistant	عامل في محل	the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط
quality	جودة	the latest	الأحدث
free	مجاني	boil (ed)	يغلي
advert	إعلان	suit (ed)	يلائم/يناسب

Words & Meanings

kettle	غلاية	you can boil water with this
microwave	جهاز ميكروويف	a machine that cooks food very quickly using special waves[1]
sale	أوكازيون	a time when a shop sells things at a cheaper price than usual
smart	ذكي	using computers or the internet to make something work better
discount	خصم	a price that is less than usual
deal	صفقة	a good or cheap price

Arabic Meaning

1- موجات

coffee machine ماكينة صنع القهوة	you can make a hot drink with this.
speaker مكبر صوت (سماعة)	equipment[2] that you connect to or is part of a phone, radio, computer, etc. so that you can listen to it
special offer عرض خاص	something that is a good price or free to encourage[3] people to buy it

٢- معدات
٣- يشجع

Expressions & Prepositions

the sale is **on**	الأوكازيون مستمر	**offer** a deal	يعرض صفقة
visit a website	يزور موقع	look **for**	يبحث عن
shop **online**	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت	start ... **with**	يبدأ ...... بـ ......
it **has** a discount	.... به تخفيض بالسعر	spend .... **on**	ينفق ..... على
at the best prices	بأفضل الأسعار	a discount / deal **on**	خصم/صفقة على
deal of the day	صفقة اليوم	**on** the Mediterranean Sea	على البحر المتوسط
play music	يشغل موسيقى		

Word Differences

price	سعر	prize	جائزة
soup	حساء (شوربة)	soap	صابونة
sale	أوكازيون	sail	شراع/يبحر
kettle	غلاية	cattle	ماشية

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
spend	ينفق (مال)/يقضي (وقت)	spent	spent
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
get	يحصل على/يشترى	got	got

Language Notes

sale - discount - deal

- **sale** أوكازيون: تخفيض للأسعار تقوم به المحلات فى مواسم معينة

Ex. I'm waiting for Eid al-Fitr sales to buy a new microwave.

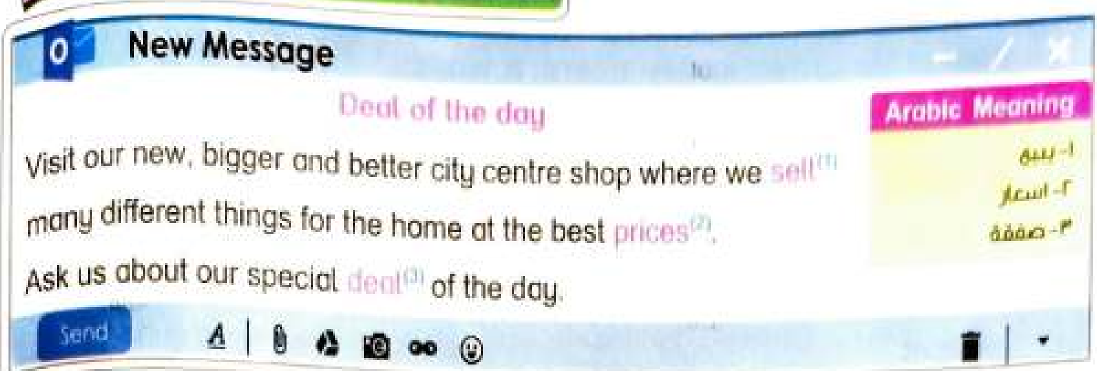
- **discount** خصم: تخفيض على سعر منتج تقوم به المحلات

Ex. You can get a 15% discount on that shirt.

- **deal** صفقة: شراء شيء بسعر منخفض جدًا

Ex. I bought that oven for only 300 pounds. It was a great deal.





Deal of the day

Visit our new, bigger and better city centre shop where we sell[1] many different things for the home at the best prices[2].
Ask us about our special deal[3] of the day.

Arabic Meaning

١- يبيع
٢- أسعار
٣- صفقة



Voice : Do you love music? Do you want the latest[1] technology? We have the best headphones now at audioworld. We are selling them in red, which is our most popular[2] colour, and also in black and white. This week you can buy them at the special[3] price of only 1500 Egyptian pounds. Visit our shop today!

Arabic Meaning

١- الأحدث
٢- محبوب
٣- مميز

SB Page (14)

Shop Assistant : Hello, sir. Can I help you?

Customer[1] : Yes, please, I'm looking for a new TV for my living room.

Shop Assistant : OK, no problem. You're lucky[2] we have lots of deals at the moment! For example, both of these TVs have a big discount[3].

Customer : Great. Are they smart TVs?

Shop Assistant : No, sorry. Neither of these are smart[4] TVs, but this one over there is and that is also on special offer[5].

Customer : Hmm, that one is a bit smaller than what I want. I want quite a big one. How much is this bigger one?

Shop Assistant : Oh, yes! That's a great TV. That's new in the shop this week, so it doesn't have a discount. It is 8,000 pounds.

Customer : That's a bit expensive for me. Is that your best price?

Shop Assistant : Yes, sorry, but I am offering a deal today. You can get either a free speaker[6] or get a free films deal with that one.

Customer : Oh, well that's great because I need a new speaker. I think this one will look great in my living room[7]. I'll take it!

Arabic Meaning

١- زبون
٢- محظوظ
٣- خصم
٤- ذكي
٥- عرض
٦- مكبر صوت
٧- غرفة المعيشة

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The microwave has a 25% .... Usually, it costs 1,000 LE but now it is 750 LE. WB
   a discount b mistake c distance d leisure
2. Osama's family have a .... TV. They can now watch films from the internet. WB
   a stupid b foolish c smart d clever
3. Companies and shops use .... to advertise things, like electronics.
   a laptops b posters c headphones d microwaves
4. Mum filled the .... and switched it on to get some hot water.
   a kettle b cattle c fridge d radio
5. I enjoy wearing my .... over my ears to listen to the music.
   a trousers b shorts c speakers d headphones

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I bought the laptop for a good price. It was a great **meal**. (..........)
2. There's a special **over** in this shop. You can get 50% off. (..........)
3. I made a cup of coffee with the **café** machine. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I got that microwave yesterday. There were really fantastic .... at that big shop.
   a deals b sails c classes d tops
2. You can boil water with a .... WB
   a kettle b fridge c laptop d television
3. You can cook things quickly with a .... WB
   a laptop b microwave c fridge d kettle
4. Mum likes going shopping during the Eid al-Fitr ....
   a sails b mails c letters d sales
5. We can cook food inside a/an ....
   a oven b glass c jug d mug

6. I visited the company's .... for more information about their TVs.

   a email b electronics c website d magazine

7. You must go and get the mobile you like. There is a sale ....

   a on b in c for d about

8. I like reading about technology in .... articles.

   a television b magazine c radio d class

9. That shop gives people discounts .... toys.

   a in b at c on d out

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Shops make **sails** at the end of every year. (............)
2. To listen to the song, you must connect your **oven** now. (............)
3. A **kettle** is used to keep food cold. (............)
4. Would you like to go shopping or shop **offline**? (............)







1- Comparative and Superlative Adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

- تنقسم الصفات إلى صفات قصيرة وصفات طويلة.

من أمثلة الصفات القصيرة

طويل | tall صغير | small عالي | high

من أمثلة الصفات الطويلة

شيق | interesting غالي الثمن | expensive مريح | comfortable

- تستخدم صيغة المقارنة **Comparative** للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين
- تستخدم صيغة التفضيل **Superlative** للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.
- تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلي:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "cheap"	صفة + er + than "cheaper than" Ex. The laptop is cheaper than the mobile.	the + صفة + est "the cheapest" Ex. The microwave is the cheapest.
long adjective "useful"	أكثر / أقل more / less + صفة + than Ex. The fridge is more useful than the oven.	الأكثر / الأقل the most / the least + صفة Ex. Computers are the most useful.

لاحظ الآتي عند تكوين المقارنة/التفضيل

١- إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بـ **e** يضاف **r** فقط عند تكوين صيغة المقارنة ويضاف **st** فقط عند تكوين صيغة التفضيل.

nice ⇨ nicer than ⇨ the nicest

٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يليه حرف **(y)** يحول حرف **(y)** إلى **(i)** ونضيف **(er)** أو **(est)**:

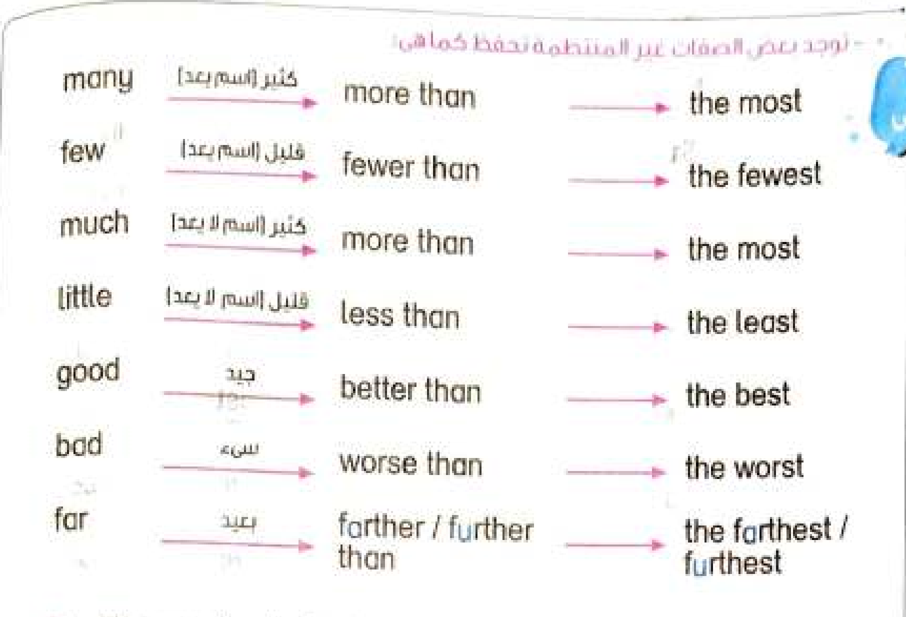
easy ⇨ easier than ⇨ the easiest / busy ⇨ busier than ⇨ the busiest

٣- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير:

big ⇨ bigger than ⇨ the biggest / thin ⇨ thinner than ⇨ the thinnest

لاحظ الآتي

- توجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي:



many	كثير (اسم يعد) →	more than →	the most
few	قليل (اسم يعد) →	fewer than →	the fewest
much	كثير (اسم لا يعد) →	more than →	the most
little	قليل (اسم لا يعد) →	less than →	the least
good	جيد →	better than →	the best
bad	سيء →	worse than →	the worst
far	بعيد →	farther / further than →	the farthest / furthest

Ex. The weather today is worse than it was yesterday.

تذكر

١- للتعبير عن تساوى شخصين / شيئين فى نفس الصفة نستخدم:

اسم + as + صفة + as + be + اسم

Ex. The TV is as expensive as the fridge.

٢- للتعبير عن عدم تساوى شخصين / شيئين فى نفس الصفة نستخدم

اسم + as + صفة + not as + be + اسم

Ex. The microwave isn't as expensive as the kettle.

لاحظ الآتي

١- من الممكن أن نستخدم (much) تليها صفة مقارنة لتحديد مقدارها:

Ex. The new phone is much easier to use than my old one.

[WB p.85]

٢- نستخدم حرف الجر **in** بعد صفات التفضيل إذا تلاها اسم مفرد يدل على مكان أو اسم يدل على مجموعة (team / class ...):

Ex. The Nile is the longest river in the world.

Ex. My sister is the tallest in our family.

- بينما نستخدم حرف الجر **of** إذا تلاها اسم جمع:

Ex. Ahmed is the cleverest of all his friends.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omnia is .... than Sara.
   a) nice b) nicer c) nicest d) as nice
2. The kettle is .... item in the shop.
   a) cheaper b) cheapest c) cheap d) the cheapest
3. Sara is .... girl in the class.
   a) most beautiful b) the most beautiful c) more beautiful d) the more beautiful

2- both, either, neither, none

1- both كلا، كلتا / both of كلا من

١- تستخدم (both / both of) عند الحديث عن اثنين:

Ex. Both the sisters are good at maths.

Ex. Both of the books are mine.

٢- تستخدم (both .. and...) بمعني (كلاً من ...... و .....) للربط بيت إسمين أو صفتين أو فعلين:

Ex. We met both my aunt and my uncle. (إسمين)

Ex. Ali is both tall and strong. (صفتين)

Ex. Clever students both study hard and sleep well. (فعلين)

٣- يأتى بعد (both of) اسم جمع أو ضمير مفعول جمع (them / us / you) أو ضمير اشارة جمع (these / those):

Ex. Hassan met both of them.

Ex. I bought both of these books yesterday.

- لاحظ انه عندما يلى (both of) اسم جمع يتبعه فعل لفاعل جمع:

Ex. Both of my brothers are at home.

٤- تأتى ضمائر الجمع قبل (both) بينما تأتى بعد (both of):

Ex. They both liked the film. = Both of them liked the film.

2- either أى من / either of أيا من

١- تستخدم (either) للإختيار بين إثنين ويتبعها اسم مفرد بَعد:

Ex. Either kettle is expensive.

٢- تستخدم (either of) بمعنى (أيا من ...) ويليها اسم جمع أو ضمير مفعول جمع (them / us / you) أو ضمير اشارة جمع (these / those):

Ex. Do either of you play a sport?

Ex. I will buy either of these items.

- لاحظ أنه عندما يلى (either of) اسم جمع يتبعه فعل لفاعل مفرد (فى اللغة الرسمية) أو فعل لفاعل جمع (فى اللغة غير الرسمية):

Ex. Either of the boys wants to leave the room. (لغة رسمية)

Ex. Either of the girls are coming. (لغة غير رسمية)

٢- تستخدم (either ...... or .....) بمعنى (إما ...... أو ......) للربط بين اسمين أو صفتين أو فعلين:

Ex. I will wear either the shorts or the trousers. (اسمين)

Ex. The shoes are either black or grey. (صفتين)

Ex. They will either study or watch TV. (فعلين)

٤- عند ما تربط (either ... or ...) فاعلين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأقرب فى الافراد والجمع:

Ex. Either Osama or the girls are coming.

3- neither ولا أي / neither of ولا أي من

١- تستخدم (neither) لنفى احتمال عن إثنين ويتبعها اسم مفرد بعد ويستخدم معها دائما فعل فى صيغة الإثبات:

Ex. Neither parent came to meet the teacher.

٢- يأتى بعد (neither of) اسم جمع أو ضمير مفعول جمع (them / us / you) أو ضمير اشارة جمع (these / those):

Ex. Neither of them is coming.

Ex. Neither of those pens belongs to me.

- لاحظ أنه عندما يلى (neither of) اسم جمع يتبعه فعل لفاعل مفرد (فى اللغة الرسمية) أو فعل لفاعل جمع (فى اللغة غير الرسمية):

Ex. Neither of the laptops is mine. (لغة رسمية)

Ex. Neither of the kettles are expensive. (لغة غير رسمية)

٣- عند ما تربط (neither ... nor ...) فاعلين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأقرب فى الافراد والجمع:

Ex. Neither Ahmed nor his friends are coming.

٤- تستخدم (neither ...... nor .....) بمعنى (لا .... ولا ....) للربط بين إسمين أو صفتين أو فعلين:

Ex. I met neither the husband nor the wife. (اسمين)

Ex. The T-shirt is neither cheap nor good. (صفتين)

Ex. They will neither play nor go out. (فعلين)

4- none of لا أحد من

١- تستخدم (none of) بمعنى (لا أحد من...) ويليها اسم جمع أو ضمير مفعول جمع (them / us / you) أو ضمير اشارة جمع (these / those):

Ex. None of the boys want to buy these phones.

Ex. None of them work hard.

لاحظ أن (none of) يليها اسم جمع ثم فعل لفاعل مفرد (في اللغة الرسمية) أو فعل لفاعل جمع (في اللغة غير الرسمية):

Ex. None of us wants to buy these phones. (SB p. 15) (لغة رسمية)

Ex. None of them study hard. (لغة غير رسمية)

ملحوظة: تأتي ضمائر المفعول الجمع (you / them / us) أو ضمائر الإشارة الجمع (those / these) بعد (either of / neither of / both of) وليس بعد (either / neither / both).

Ex. Either of them arrived at school late. (Not: Either them ....)

Ex. Neither of these books is mine. (Not: Neither these ...)

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... Ali nor Ahmed went to the funfair.
   a Both b Neither c Either d None
2. Both my brother .... my sister like science.
   a and b or c nor d not
3. .... of the three boys liked the toys.
   a Both b Neither c Either d None

Drills

Rewrite جزء لتدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

1) Laptops are more expensive than microwaves. (less)

- لإستخدام (less) بدلاً من (more) نقوم بتبديل طرفي المقارنة للحفاظ علي معني الجملة.

Microwaves are less expensive than laptops.

2) The TV costs 5000 LE. The mobile costs 5000 LE. (as ..... as)

- لإستخدام (as ..... as) نضع بينهم صفة مناسبة للحفاظ علي معني الجملة.

The TV is as expensive as the mobile.

3) The cleverest girl in the class is Naglaa. (No)

- لاستخدم (No) هنا نحول صيغة التفضيل إلى صيغة مقارنة منفية.

No other girl is cleverer than Naglaa in the class.

4) The oven is cheap. The kettle is cheap, too. (Both)

- تستخدم (Both ...... and) للربط بين إسمين.

Both the oven and the kettle are cheap.

5) Habiba doesn't speak either French or Italian. (neither ... nor)

- لاحظ أن (either... or...) مع فعل منفى تساوى فى المعنى (neither... nor...) مع فعل مثبت.

Habiba speaks neither French nor Italian.

6) All the girls felt happy at the party. (None of)

- لاستخدام [None of] هنا نأتي بالعكس من الصفة الموجودة للحفاظ على معنى الجملة.

None of the girls felt sad at the party.

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hazem is .... than his brother.
   a strong b stronger c strongest d the strong
2. I think maths is the .... subject. I'm not good at it.
   a worse b worst c best d better
3. Televisions are .... than kettles. SB
   a more expensive b most expensive c as expensive d so expensive
4. .... of the two teachers came to the meeting. They were too ill.
   a Neither b Either c Both d None
5. .... the laptop and the microwave are in the sale. SB
   a Either b Both c None d Neither
6. There were two books here, but .... of them belonged to me.
   a none b neither c both d not

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The cheapest item in my kitchen is the microwave. (No)

   ....
2. Kettles are less expensive than computers. SB (more)

   ....
3. We both went to the meeting. (Both of)

   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. You can either go on foot **nor** by bus. (..............)
2. I can neither watch TV **or** play football. (..............)
3. None of **their** plays tennis. (..............)
4. You can get **neither** the headphones or the speakers. (..............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Manal is the .... girl in her family.
   a tall b taller c as tall d tallest
2. The .... thing in my kitchen is the fridge. SB
   a more useful b most useful c less useful d much useful
3. It is .... to buy clothes in shops than online. SB
   a good b best c better d more good
4. This question is .... than the first one.
   a easy b easier c easiest d as easy
5. .... of these TVs have a big discount. SB
   a Both b No c Much d Little
6. Tarek usually has .... an egg or some fruit for breakfast. WB
   a either b all c none d both
7. .... of the three girls liked the film. They left the cinema early.
   a Both b Neither c None d No
8. I want .... a pen or a pencil.
   a neither b either c both d none
9. Maher said that he was happy with .... book.
   a both b none of c neither of d either

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The film is more popular than the play. (less)

   ....
2. Taher isn't as tall as Sameh. (taller)

   ....
3. Ayman didn't eat. He didn't drink. (neither)

   ....
4. Doaa is kind. Sara is kind, too. (Both)

   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Neither my wife <u>and</u> my children are here. (..........)
2. This shop is <u>either</u> exciting nor cheap. (..........)
3. Both Amr <u>or</u> Hani are my friends. (..........)
4. The new students are very lazy. <u>Either</u> of them study hard. (..........)
5. <u>No</u> of my friends studies science well. (..........)

Writing

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

"Items that you have in your kitchen"

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What can you do with each item?
- Which item is the most / least useful?
- Which item do you think is the most / least expensive?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have an expensive ....
- I use it to ....
- It is more useful than ....
- ....is the most / least useful item in my kitchen.
- .... is the most / least expensive item in my kitchen.

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16-18 WB pages 81-82

Key Vocabulary

handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية / حرف يدوية	decorate (d)	يزين
password	كلمة المرور	charge (d)	يشحن (بالكهرباء)
shell	صَدفة		

Important Phrasal Verbs

turn off	يطفئ/يوقف (جهاز)	fill in	يملأ (إستمارة)
turn on	يشغل (جهاز)	plug in	يوصل بالكهرباء
log in	يسجل الدخول لجهاز		

Handicrafts & Materials

wooden box	صندوق خشبي	wool carpet	سجادة من الصوف
leather bag	حقيبة جلدية	stone statue	تمثال من الحجر

Vocabulary

traditional	تقليدي	form	إستمارة
suddenly	فجأة	soft	ناعم/لين
battery	بطارية	pot	وعاء
artist	فنان	history	التاريخ (كمادة دراسية - كعلم)
coast	ساحل	leaf (pl. leaves)	ورقة شجر
area	منطقة	cool	رائع/بارد
industry	صناعة	basket	سلة
colourful	زاهي الألوان	design (ed)(n)	يصمم/تصميم
metal	معدن	guess (ed)	يخمن
glass	زجاج	earn (ed)	يكسب (مال)
plastic	البلاستيك		

Words & Meanings

handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية	objects made by a person in a traditional way, such as baskets, bowls, etc.	**Arabic Meaning**
password	كلمة المرور	a special, secret[1] word that you must write or say before you can use a computer or go into a place	١- سري ٢- يوصل ٣- الكهرباء
fill in	يملأ (إستمارة)	complete information on a piece of paper or online	
log in	يسجل الدخول لجهاز	put in information so that you can use a computer	
turn on	يشغل (جهاز)	make a machine start working	
turn off	يغلق (جهاز)	make a machine stop working	
plug in	يوصل بالكهرباء	connect[2] equipment to electricity[3]	

Expressions  Prepositions

Expressions		Prepositions	
feel very bad	يشعر بالاستياء الشديد	find out about	يعرف عن
how to use	كيفية إستعمال	Congratulations on.....	تهانينا على.....
in different colours	بألوان مختلفة	walk down a road	يسير في طريق
look amazing	يبدو مذهلاً	decorate .... with..	يزين ...... بـ.......
make handicrafts	يصنع مصنوعات يدوية	interested in	مهتم بـ
the computer broke	الكمبيوتر تعطل	famous for	مشهور بـ
Yours faithfully	مع خالص تحياتي	instructions for	تعليمات لـ

Word Differences

password	كلمة المرور	passport	جواز السفر
coast	ساحل	cost	تكلفة/يكلف
history	التاريخ (كمادة دراسية - كعلم)	date	تاريخ (اليوم مثلاً)
leather	جلد مدبوغ	skin	جلد - بشرة (إنسان/حيوان)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
meet	يقابل	met	met

Language Notes

1) Transitive Verbs

- بعض الأفعال المتعدية تتبع بمفعولين أحدهما مفعول مباشر والآخر غير مباشر .
- يأتي المفعول المباشر بعد الفعل إذا لم يوجد مفعول غير مباشر .

Ex. I sent a form. (مفعول مباشر).

- إذا وجد مفعولان فإن المفعول غير المباشر يأتي بعد الفعل مباشرة ثم المفعول المباشر.

Ex. I sent Aya a form.

Aya ↓ مفعول غير مباشر

a form ↓ مفعول مباشر

2) • Ergative Verbs

- هي أفعال مرنة يمكن أن تكون متعدية (تحتاج لمفعول بعدها) أو تكون لازمة (لا تحتاج لمفعول بعدها).

حيث يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول، ومن هذه الأفعال:

break	يكسر/ينكسر	close	يغلق/ينغلق	move	يحرك/يتحرك	stop	يوقف/يتوقف
change	يغير/يتغير	finish	ينهي/ينتهي	open	يفتح/ينفتح	turn off	يطفئ/ينطفئ

Ex. I broke the glass. (فعل متعدي)

Ex. I dropped the glass and it broke. (فعل لازم - الفاعل والمفعول واحد)

3) made of - made from

- **made of** مصنوع من (المادة الخام لم تتغير)

Ex. The carpet is made of wool.

- **made from** مصنوع من (المادة الخام تغيرت)

Ex. Bread is made from flour.

4) win - earn

- **win** يفوز (بمباراة - بجائزة ....الخ)

Ex. Egypt won the match yesterday.

- **earn** يكسب (مال)

Ex. My dad earns a lot of money.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Sama lent ....

a to me her book b for me her book c me her book d me to her book

2- The engine .... working and the car didn't move.

a stop b stopped c is stops d stopping

3- That statue is made .... stone.

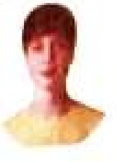
a of b from c by d at

4- Hassan works hard, so he .... much money.

a wins b earns c leaves d builds



SB Page (16)



Hello. How can I help you, Aya?



Hi. I bought a laptop last week. Yesterday, when I was doing my homework, it suddenly turned off[1]. Now I can't log in[2] and I think I lost[3] my work!

Was the computer plugged in[4]?



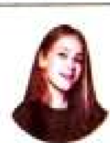
Yes, it was plugged in. I was charging[5] the battery[6].

Did you turn on[7] the computer again?



Yes, but then it said my password[8] to log in was wrong.

One moment please .... I just emailed you a form[9] to fill in[10] to get a new password. Log in again with that information. I hope that works!



OK, thank you.

Arabic Meaning

١- ينطفئ (جهاز)
٢- يسجل الدخول لجهاز
٣- يفقد
٤- موصل بالكهرباء
٥- يشحن
٦- بطارية
٧- يشغل
٨- كلمة مرور
٩- استمارة
١٠- يملأ استمارة

SB Page (18)

Egyptian Handicrafts
The best quality[1] and prices!

A: These beautiful wooden[2] boxes can be used for jewellery. They are decorated[3] with shells[4] in traditional designs. They are made by artists[5] near the coast[6].

B: The leather industry[7] is one of the oldest in Egypt and our bags are the best quality. The leather is very soft.

C: We sell many different types of pots[8] in different colours for your home. The artists paint[9] the pots with traditional Arabic designs.

D: Egypt has a long history[10] of making beautiful carpets. These colourful[11], modern carpets will look amazing in any home.

Call or email us to find out about special offers.

Arabic Meaning

١- جودة
٢- خشبي
٣- يزين
٤- صدف
٥- فنانين
٦- ساحل
٧- صناعة الجلود
٨- أوعية
٩- يلون
١٠- تاريخ
١١- زاهي الألوان











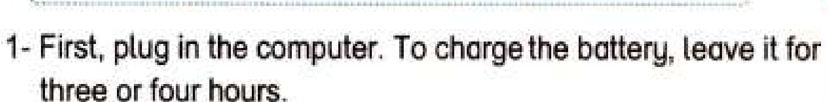
*statue — ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة (shoe) تماما:

WB Page (81)

Congratulations[1] on buying a new computer!
Here are the instructions for how to use it:

Arabic Meaning

١- تهانينا
٢- يخمن



1- First, plug in the computer. To charge the battery, leave it for three or four hours.



2. Now turn on the computer.
3. When the computer is ready, it will ask you to fill in some information.
4. Write a name and choose a password that nobody can guess[2].
5. Now you can log in to your computer and start using it.
6. Don't forget to turn off your computer when you are not using it.





WB Page (82)

The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful handicrafts. People who live here sell carpets, baskets[1] and colourful pots. Some women in a village[2] near Aswan also make beautiful handicrafts from the leaves[3] of trees. In other parts of Egypt, people make handicrafts from wood and leather. These handicrafts are very popular with tourists and help the Egyptians to earn[4] money.

Arabic Meaning

١- سلال
٢- قرية
٣- ورق شجر
٤- يكسب (مال)

Videoscript

Ceramics[1] is the word we use to describe pots, vases, bowls and tiles[2] that are made from clay. Clay[3] is a type of mud[4] which you can use to make ceramics. This man is using clay to make a vase. We can then paint the ceramics to make them both more colourful and more beautiful.

Arabic Meaning

١- أواني خزفية
٢- بلاط
٣- صلصال
٤- طمي - طين
٥- طبق مسطح

The Ancient Egyptians made some of the earliest ceramics in the world. They used clay from both the River Nile in the south of Egypt and from the city of Qena.

The Ancient Egyptians used both kinds of clay to make some ceramics that you can still see today.

This vase is almost four thousand years old. It was made from Qena clay.

Qena clay makes pots whiter than those made from Nile clay.

This vase is even older. It is almost five thousand years old and it was made from clay from the Nile. Neither vase is painted. People probably used both of these vases to carry water.

This plate[5] is from the nineteenth century. This plate is even older. It is from the eleventh century. Both plates are from Egypt and they are both painted beautifully.

Egyptian ceramics are very beautiful. Do you have any at home?

Exercises on Lessons



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you want to use a machine, first you need to turn it .... WB

   a on   b off   c out   d away

2. Many computers ask you to .... in before you can use them. WB

   a fly   b put   c interest   d log

3. That shop sells pottery and traditional ....

a sports b hobbies c handicrafts d interests

4. To use the computer, you must enter your .... first.

a screen b address c keyboard d password

5. The sailors got fantastic .... from the sea.

a shells b chairs c shores d checks

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The mobile battery is empty; I need to **choose** it. (..........)
2. There were a lot of **status** at the temple. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Now my phone is not working! I need to .... the battery. WB
   a damage b care c charge d turn
2. Could you please turn the TV .... before you go to bed?
   a on b in c off d out
3. You can't use this computer without the .... I think it's 123hello! WB
   a web b internet c password d passport
4. I have bought a beautiful .... box for mum.
   a wool b cloth c wooden d cotton
5. **A:** Why is that carpet expensive? **B:** Because it is made of ....
   a wood b wall c wave d wool
6. Some Egyptians .... are made from leaves of trees.
   a hands b handicrafts c glasses d screens
7. Congratulations .... getting the full mark, Hossam. You are excellent.
   a at b on c off d out
8. Ahmed turned .... his computer and checked his mail.
   a at b by c off d on
9. My mum .... my room with red and blue ribbons on my birthday.
   a damaged b decorated c hurt d destroyed
10. The south of Egypt is famous .... its beautiful handicrafts. SB
    a in b for c to d out

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I'm really interested **out** science. (..........)
2. The expensive bags are made of **skin**. (..........)
3. You must fill **out** this form now. (..........)



1- The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

Subject التصريف الثاني للفعل + (كل الضمائر) فاعل

تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة

أولاً: الأفعال المنتظمة : هي الأفعال التي يتكون منها الماضي بإضافة (ed) لآخر الفعل

play → played   walk → walked

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نضيف له (d) فقط.

like → liked   dance → danced

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يليه حرف y نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied)

study → studied   carry → carried

- يضاعف الحرف الأخير في بعض الأفعال عند إضافة ed

stop → stopped   travel → travelled

Ex. Aya finished her homework yesterday.

Ex. The machine stopped working last week.

ثانيًا: الأفعال غير المنتظمة: وهي التي لا يضاف لها ed في الماضي وتحفظ

go → went   eat → ate

Ex. The assistant sent Aya a form.

Negative النفي

ينفي زمن الماضي البسيط بالصيغة الآتية:

Subject + did not + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. I didn't give my friend the phone.

- ومن الممكن استخدام (never) ويبقى الفعل كما هو:

Ex. We never went to school late.

Question السؤال

نسأل عن زمن الماضي البسيط بالصيغة الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) Did + فاعل + inf.مصدر الفعل ...?

Ex. Did you travel to Alex last week?

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

- Yes, I did.
- No, I didn't.

Ex. Why did you come late?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last (week - month - year)	الماضى ...	ago	منذ
in (2018)	فى سنة سابقة	in the past	فى الماضى	once	ذات مرة

Passive المبنى للمجهول

نائب الفاعل + was / were + p.p... (by ....)

Ex. The living room was cleaned by Hossam yesterday.

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى.

Ex. I travelled to London in 2020.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I was on holiday, I always .... on the beach.
   a played b play c playing d plays
2. What did that scientist .... for his country?
   a doing b did c does d do

2- The past continuous tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Form التكوين

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was + V-ing
We / You / They / اسم جمع + were + V-ing

Ex. At 8 o'clock yesterday we were having dinner.

لاحظ الآتى

كيف يُضاف للفعل (ing):

١- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة (ing) (مع بعض الأفعال ذو المقطع الواحد):

sit → sitting tap → tapping

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) غير منطوق يحذف الـ (e) ثم تضاف (ing) إلى الفعل:

use → using make → making

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) منطوق لا تحذف عند إضافة (ing):

see → seeing be → being

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرفى (ie) تحول إلى (y) عند إضافة (ing):

lie → lying die → dying

Negative النفي

فاعل + was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't) + V-ing

Ex. They weren't doing anything at that time.

Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) Was / Were + subject + V- ing......?

Ex. Were you working when I phoned you?

Ex. What was Asmaa doing when Soha arrived?

Passive المبني للمجهول

نائب فاعل + was / were + being + p.p. (by......)

Ex. The room was being cleaned when I came.

Ex. The letters were being written when the electricity went out.

Usage الاستخدام

١- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الحدوث أثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. I was waiting for the match to start at 8 last night.

٢- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث طويل كان مستمرا في الحدوث عندما قطعه أو وقع أثناءه حدث آخر قصير فيكون الحدث الطويل في الماضي المستمر والحدث القصير الذي وقع أثناءه في الماضي البسيط:

Ex. While I was reading a story, the telephone rang.

- وللتعبير عن فكرة الحدث الطويل المستمر والحدث القصير الذي وقع أثناءه أو قطعه في الماضي نستخدم الروابط التالية:

While / As / Just as / When → Past continuous ماضٍ مستمر (حدث طويل) + Past simple ماضٍ بسيط (حدث قصير)

Ex. As / When we were walking down the road, we met our friend Hany.

When → Past simple ماضٍ بسيط (حدث قصير) + Past continuous ماضٍ مستمر (حدث مستمر)

Ex. When Mona fell asleep, she was watching TV.

٣- يستخدم التعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس التوقيت في الماضي - وللتعبير عن هذه الفكرة نستخدم الروابط التالية:

While / As
Just as / When → **Past continuous** ماض مستمر (حدث مستمر) + **Past continuous** ماض مستمر (حدث مستمر)

Ex. While I was having lunch, my sister was watching TV.

٤- تأتي During مكان While ولكن يأتي بعدها إسم:

During أثناء + **noun**

Ex. During the film, Sara was studying.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I .... fast when I fell down.

a have run b were running c was running d ran

2- .... my visit to the museum, I saw many monuments.

a While b Just as c During d As

3- When the train arrived, we .... on the platform.

a wait b was waiting c were waiting d waiting

Drills

Rewrite جزء لتدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

1) I visited Luxor and Aswan in 2019. (ago)

- لإستخدام (ago) نقوم بحساب الفترة الزمنية من وقت الحدث حتي الآن ونضعها قبل ago مباشرة.

I visited Luxor and Aswan two years ago.

2) Zeinab was doing her homework when the light went out. (while / as)

- لإستخدام (while / as) لابد ان يليهم الحدث الطويل الذي يكون في زمن الماضي المستمر، أي نقوم بوضعهم مكان (when) مع تبديل طرفي الجملة.

The light went out while/as Zeinab was doing her homework.

3) He fell down and broke his leg while he was playing a match. (during)

- يمكن أن تستخدم (during) مكان (while) على أن يليها اسم.

He fell down and broke his leg during the match.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This morning, I .... to the town centre with my mum. SB
   a go b goes c went d going
2. When the phone rang, I .... a story.
   a was reading b have read c am reading d read
3. While he .... his bicycle, he fell off and broke his leg.
   a rides b was riding c rode d is riding
4. The computer broke while I .... my Facebook account.
   a was checking b checked c am checking d checking
5. As I was giving my friend the phone, he .... it. SB
   a drop b drops c dropped d was dropping

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Munir was studying when his sister came home. (while)
....
2. A car hit Mona while she was crossing the road. (when)
....
3. I fell asleep during the film. (while)
....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. While Hany **driving** his car, he saw beautiful views. (..................)
2. We played football and we **take** photos. (..................)
3. Amr **making** tea when his mother called him. (..................)
4. Hani fell asleep while he **listened** to music. (..................)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I walked into the room, everyone ....
   a is working b were working c worked d was working
2. I was watching a movie when I .... Maher standing outside.
   a see b seeing c saw d was seen
3. I showed my friends my new phone while we .... down the road. SB
   a was walking b were walking c walking d walk
4. It .... all night yesterday.
   a rains b is raining c was raining d will rain

5. Rawan called me while I .... a bath, so I couldn't answer the phone!
   a had   b have   c am having   d was having
6. I .... a famous singer when I was doing the shopping.
   a was seeing   b see   c am seeing   d saw
7. Hany was making tea when he .... himself.
   a was hurting   b hurt   c has hurt   d will hurt
8. I saw Mr Amir in the park while he .... a book.
   a was read   b reads   c reading   d was reading
9. .... the film, Mrs Hala fell asleep.
   a When   b While   c During   d As
10. When Mr Ali .... at school, his children were playing.
   a arrive   b arrived   c arriving   d was arriving

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. My father arrived while we were watching TV. (When)
....
2. They visited us last month. (ago)
....
3. During his stay in London, he met many Egyptians. (While)
....
4. She was cooking while she was talking to me. (As)
....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. While I was walking down the road, I **see** an accident. (..................)
2. While I was drinking coffee, my father **come** into my room. (..................)
3. Hanaa felt sad when Hend **is** ill. (..................)
4. What were you **do** at 5 o'clock yesterday? (..................)

Writing

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on: SB

"A problem that you had with technology"

[مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب]

....
....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- **What was the problem?**
- **When did the problem happen?**
- **What did you do about it?**
- **How did you feel in the end?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- **I went to the .... with ....**
- **I bought a cool new ....**
- **On our way home, we met ....**
- **As I was giving my friend the ...., he ....**
- **My friend felt .... and I was ....**

Lessons 5,6 & 7

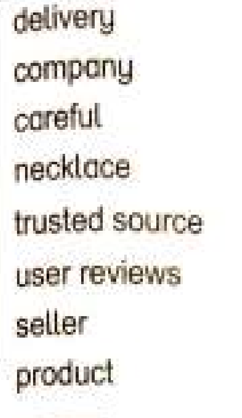
SB pages 19-21 WB pages 83-85



Key Vocabulary

toaster	محمصة الخبز (توستر)	call (ed) back	يعاود الاتصال
complaint (ed)(n)	شكوى/يشتكي	email (ed)(n)	يرسل بالبريد الإليكتروني/بريد إليكتروني
order (ed)(n)	يطلب/طلب «تجاري»		

Vocabulary



delivery	توصيل	however	بالرغم من ذلك
company	شركة	size	مقاس
careful	حريص	present	هدية
necklace	قلادة (عقد)	broken	مكسور
trusted source	مصدر موثوق فيه	noisy	صاخب/مزعج
user reviews	تقييمات المستخدمين	horrible	سئ جداً
seller	بائع	excited	متشوق
product	منتج	loud	عالي الصوت - صاخب

Words & Meanings

order	يطلب	when a customer asks someone to send, bring or make something for them
complaint	شكوى	something you make when you are unhappy about something
call back	يعاود الاتصال بـ	to return a phone call
email	يرسل بالبريد الإليكتروني	to send a message electronically[1]
toaster	محمصة الخبز	a machine in the kitchen that you can use to make bread turn brown[2] by making it hotter

Arabic Meaning
١- بشكل إليكتروني
٢- يتحول للون البني

Expressions & Prepositions



make a complaint	يقدم شكوى	present **for**	هدية لـ
answer a complaint	يرد على شكوى	happy **with**	سعيد بـ
do online shopping	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت	wait **for**	ينتظر
a **bit** big	كبيرة قليلاً	send..... **back**	يرجع (سلعة تالفة مثلاً)
sorry **about**	آسف على	**over** two weeks	أكثر من أسبوعين
buy **from**	يشتري من		

Word Differences

present	هدية	prize	جائزة
product	منتج	produce	ينتج
complaint	شكوى	complain	يشكو

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
make	يصنع/ يجعل	made	made

Tapescript نصوص الاستماع

SB Page (19)

Hisham : Hello, Egyptian Handicrafts[1]. How can I help you?

Ali : Hello, I want to make a complaint[2].

Hisham : Oh, dear. What's the problem?

Ali : I ordered some pots three weeks ago for my shop. Your website says the delivery[3] takes five days, but I'm still waiting!

Hisham : I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name and the order number, please?

Ali : Yes, it's Ali Ahmed, and the order number is 3-4-4-5-3-8. I emailed[4] you last week.

Hisham : Ah yes, Mr Ahmed. You ordered 50 pots for delivery to Kenya[5], is that right?

Ali : That's correct.

Hisham : Hmm, yes the delivery company has your order. I'll call the delivery company and ask them what the problem is and I'll call you back. Can I take your phone number, please?

Ali : Yes, it's 254 667578. Can you call me back today, please?

Hisham : Of course.

Ali : Thank you. Goodbye.

Arabic Meaning

١- مصنوعات يدوية
٢- شكوى
٣- توصيل
٤- يرسل بريد الكتروني
٥- دولة كينيا

WB Page (33)

Mrs Nahla : Good afternoon. I want to make a complaint, please.

Assistant : Oh, dear. What's the problem?

Mrs Nahla : I ordered a new kettle from your website, but when the delivery arrived this morning, it was a microwave!

Assistant : I'm very sorry about that. Can I take your name, please?

Mrs Nahla : Yes, it's Mrs Nahla.

Assistant : Ah, yes. I'll call the delivery company and ask them to send you the correct item.

Mrs Nahla : Can they take the microwave when they come?

Assistant : Yes, of course.





*****Great Machine!

I bought this as a present[1] for my parents. They are very happy with it. It looks great in their kitchen and it is easy to use. It also makes a really delicious cup of coffee. The delivery was quick, too!

Arabic Meaning

١- هدية
٢- مكسور
٣- سيء جدًا

*Don't buy this machine!

First, I waited two weeks for delivery and then when the machine arrived, it was broken[2]! It looked good but it was very noisy and the coffee was cold and horrible[3]. I sent it back and I will buy a different one.

SB Page (21)

Yesterday, I went to the market and I bought some new things for my bedroom. While I was shopping, I saw my friend Lara. She helped me to choose a new carpet. Today, my dad painted my bedroom. Now it is blue. It looks really good!



WB Page (84)

Review (1)

I bought this microwave as a present for my parents. It looks good in the kitchen and the delivery was quick. However[1], when they used it, the food didn't cook very well. They were not very happy with it. It was horrible. I sent it back and will buy a different one.

Arabic Meaning

١- بالرغم من ذلك
٢- مشكلة
٣- عالي الصوت

Review (2)

I bought this speaker as a present for my cousin. It looks great and it is very easy to use. You can use it on your television or to play music. She is very happy with it. There is only one problem[2] with it: her parents think it is too loud[3]!

WB Page (85)

My older brother Karim is very excited because he has a new phone. First, he needed to charge the battery. To do this, he plugged in the phone and turned it on. Then he left it for a few hours. Next, he needed to fill in some information about himself. The phone asked for a password. Now, he can log in and use his phone. It's very nice!

WB Page (85)

Huda : Look at these two wooden boxes. Do you like either of them, Lama?

Lama : Yes, I like both of them, but they are expensive.

Huda : What about these pots? I like the red one and the blue one.

Lama : Sorry, I like neither the red one nor the blue one, but the yellow one is nice.

Huda : We should choose something that we both like. I think we should either buy the leather bag or the carpet.

Lama : OK, let's find the leather bag. The carpet is a bit big.

Exercises on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to make a .... The delivery is really late.
   a journey b mistake c complaint d noise
2. When we were at the restaurant, Dina .... a very big dinner.
   a gave b invited c answered d ordered
3. Can you ask Mohamed to call me .... when he gets home?
   a back b on c at d for
4. My older brother Karim is very .... as he has a new phone. WB
   a excited b sad c annoyed d angry
5. A/An .... is a machine in the kitchen that you can use to make bread turn brown.
   a television b fridge c speaker d toaster

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. **A:** Ola phoned you while you were asleep. **B:** I'll **cool** her now. (............)
2. A **complain** is something you make when you are unhappy about something. (............)
3. **A:** I lost my mobile. **B:** I'm sorry **with** that. (............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Naglaa called me but I was too busy. I will call her .... at night.
   a in b for c to d back
2. Could you please .... me when you have the latest news?
   a say b burn c email d sell
3. The common .... in my city is that the roads are too busy.
   a experiment b complaint c exercise d trip
4. I was really hungry and mum was out, so I .... two sandwiches.
   a answered b complained c emailed d ordered
5. Most of the restaurants in my town offer free ....
   a call b delivery c air d sale
6. Be .... with the pot. It is very hot.
   a careless b helpful c helpless d careful
7. We didn't like the food we ate. It was ....
   a delicious b fantastic c horrible d nice
8. The children were .... when their dad decided to take them to the zoo.
   a sad b excited c annoyed d angry
9. You must read the user .... before you buy that mobile.
   a reviews b classes c boards d books

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. To **order** is to send messages electronically. (........)
2. I couldn't turn the bread brown as the **speaker** broke. (........)
3. I **did** a complaint because the delivery was late. (........)

Language Functions

Making and answering complaints

Making a complaint	Answering a complaint
1- I want to make a complaint. أريد تقديم شكوى	1- Oh, dear. What's the problem? يا إلهي، ما المشكلة؟
2- Your website says the delivery takes five days but I'm still waiting! يقول الموقع الخاص بكم إن التسليم يستغرق خمسة أيام ولكني ما زلت أنتظر!	2- I'm very sorry about that. أنا آسف جدا لذلك
3- The toaster doesn't work. التوستر لا تعمل.	3- I will call the delivery company. سأتصل بشركة التوصيل
4- It is the wrong size. مقاسه خاطئ.	4- Can you call me back today, please? هل يمكنك أن تعاود الاتصال بي اليوم من فضلك؟

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A customer is complaining about a wrong delivery.

Assistant : Hello, how can I help you?

Man : ❶ ....

Assistant : Oh dear, ❷ ....?

Man : I ordered a kettle from your website, but you sent me a toaster.

Assistant : ❸ ....?

Man : Yes, the order number is 3-5-2.

Assistant : When did you order the kettle?

Man : ❹ ....

Assistant : Can I take your phone number, please?

Man : ❺ ....

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You have ordered a leather bag, but the delivery is late. You make a complaint.

....

2. You are an assistant. You want to know what the problem with an order is.

....

3. Your friend makes a complaint about a delivery. You feel sorry about that.

....

Writing

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

"A review of something you bought online" **SB** [مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب]

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What was the item?
- Is the review positive or negative?
- What about the delivery and the price?
- How does it look?
- How well does it work?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I decided to get a/an ....
- I bought it as a present for ....
- It helps mum make ....
- It looks .... in their kitchen and it is .... to use.
- The delivery was .... !
- The price was really ....

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. While I .... in Aswan, I met Mr friend Mahmoud.
   a was being b was c am d been
2. The farmer was burning rubbish when his clothes .... fire.
   a caught b catch c is catching d catches
3. While .... football, Ali fell down.
   a was playing b playing c played d is playing

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The plane disappeared during its flight over the country. (while)
2. Ahmed and Samir are the same height. (as...as)

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Wael is buying a mobile at a shop.

Assistant : ❶ ....?

Wael : Hello, I want to buy a smart mobile.

Assistant : This mobile has an excellent screen and a very big battery.

Wael : ❷ ....?

Assistant : It costs 3,000 pounds. Which colour would you like?

Wael : I like it black. ❸ ....?

Assistant : Yes, it has a special offer so you can get smart speakers for free.

Wael : ❹ ....

2 Read and match:

A	B
1. While he was watching TV,	a. when Mr Hossam called you?
2. Dina finished her exams	b. travel to Aswan yesterday?
3. Ahmed played handball	c. two days ago.
4. Were you studying	d. when he was twelve.
5. How did your dad	e. his father called him.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- .... 5- ....

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Handicrafts that you can buy in your area"

WB

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب)

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What handicrafts can you buy?
- What do they look like?
- What are they made of?
- Are they decorated?
- Why do people want to buy them?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I need to buy a/an ....
- The .... is made of ....
- I need the .... decorated with ....
- People like to buy .... because ....

General Exercises on Unit 2



A Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Magdy is making a complaint.

Magdy : Hello, I want to make a complaint.

Assistant : Oh, dear. ❶ .... ?

Magdy : I bought this TV yesterday, but ❷ ....

Assistant : ❸ .... ?

Magdy : Yes, it's Magdy Salah, and the order number is 3-5-2-1.

Assistant : Fine. I will help you get a different one, if you like.

Magdy : ❹ .... ?

Assistant : Yes, I can get it in two days.

Magdy : Thanks for your help.

Assistant : ❺ ....

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You have ordered a T-shirt. It arrived on time, but it was the wrong size. You make a complaint.

   ....

2. A friend asks what the best item of technology in your house is. You answer saying why.

   ....

3. Your friend made a complaint about a toaster he bought. You feel sorry about that.

   ....

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read the passage, then answer the questions:

Online shopping is popular all over the world as many people prefer it to ordinary shopping. Online shops work day and night. Imagine how it will be useful for busy people. There is no need to drive, walk in the hot weather or stand in long queues to find what you're looking for.

Internet shopping sounds perfect, but it has some main **cons**, too. Being unable to check your goods before buying is a serious problem. What if the jeans you bought don't fit or they are damaged? Returning an item can be a headache. What if the site you bought from is fake? Internet shopping is causing headaches for shop owners too. **They** are selling fewer goods and making less money. Despite the problems of online shopping, I believe it will continue to grow.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

2. Who can benefit from online shopping?

3. Do you think that online shopping will continue to grow? Why / Why not?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....

a shop owners b jeans c goods d customers

5. The underlined word "**cons**" means ....

a pros b disadvantages c advantages d ideas

6. According to the writer, all the following is correct except ....

a The online shopping site you buy from can be fake
b The online shopping is unpopular
c The online shopping is making a lot of money
d Returning an online item can be a headache

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We've got many .... from our customers about broken items.

a tricks b complaints c companies d cares

2. We .... some pasta and green salad.

a interested b tricked c cared d ordered

3. I have bought some .... for my phone, so I can play my music more loudly! WB

a speakers b toasters c ovens d emails

4. Bake the cake for 25 minutes, then turn the .... off.

a oven b television c headphones d fridge

5. Could you please tell me your .... address? I want to send you some files.

a magazine b email c television d kitchen

6. .... Alexandria and Port Said are on the Mediterranean Sea. WB

a Both b Neither c Either d None

7. .... Dareen nor Malak speak French, so they didn't understand the tourists. WB

a Either b None c Both d Neither

8. My new phone is much .... to use than the old one. WB
 a easy b easier c easiest d as easy
9. Red is .... popular colour for our toasters this year. WB
 a most b the most c the more d more
10. I like these TVs but I think the smart TVs are the .... WB
 a better b best c good d as good

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Samir doesn't go home early. Sayed doesn't go home early, too. (Neither)
....
2. The telephone rang while I was sleeping. (when)
....
3. As he was climbing the tree, he found a nest. (When)
....
4. Ali made a complaint. Salah made a complaint, too. (Both)
....

D Writing

6 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The children are waiting **four** their mother. (..................)
2. Before using my computer, I turn it **off**. (..................)
3. I **dropping** the glass while I was making a glass of tea. (..................)
4. Mazen made a **complain** about a broken vase yesterday. (..................)

7 Write an email of about 110 words:

To you friend Hayam. You need her to help you buy some items from Egyptian handicrafts.
- **Your name is Samar and your email address is samar23@yahoo.com**
- **Your friend's email address is hayam55@gmail.com**

[جاب عنه في آخر الكتاب]

....
....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى:

- How much are they?
- How much is delivery?
- How big are they?
- How long is delivery?
- Do you have any special offers?
- What colours/sizes do you have?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I really need you to help me buy ....
- I need it for ....
- Finally I need to get a/an ....
- I want to get a/an ....
- I need it decorated with ....
- I'm sure it will look amazing.



UNIT 3 My community

Objectives

Reading:
An article about a plan to help poor people; a community social network page; David Copperfield; an online message about a community project

Writing:
An article about how to help poor people; a social network message about a community problem; a survey about your community

Listening:
A conversation about a community survey; a discussion at a community meeting; people greeting and introducing each other

Speaking:
Describing communities and community problems; using formal and informal introductions and greetings

Language:
Adjectives ending in -ing or -ed

Life Skills:
Participation: responsible behaviour; Respect for diversity



1 & 2

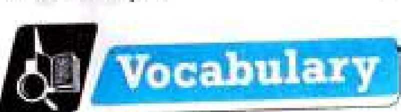
SB pages 22-25 WB pages 86-87

Key Vocabulary

pavement	رصيف الشارع	make a difference	يحدث فرق
public services	خدمات عامة	leisure	وقت الفراغ
health care	رعاية صحية	work	العمل
elderly	عجوز - كبير السن	The Decent Life Initiative	مبادرة حياة كريمة
building	مبنى - عمارة	neighbourhood	حي سكنى / أهل الحي
clean	نظافة	encourage (d)	يشجع
water	ماء	deliver (ed)	يوصل
education	التعليم		

Things in a good community

community events	فعاليات مجتمعية	facilities	مرافق
community projects	مشاريع مجتمعية	safe streets	شوارع آمنة
equal opportunities	فرص متساوية	sports activities	أنشطة رياضية
local shops	محلات محلية	good transport	وسائل المواصلات الجيدة



Vocabulary

businesses	شركات	such as	مثل
architect	مهندس معمارى	including	مشتملاً علي
streetlights	أضواء الشوارع	theatre	مسرح
volleyball	لعبة كرة الطائرة	wide	واسع - عريض
playground	ملعب - فناء	the latest	الأحدث
disabled	معاق	job opportunities	فرص عمل
rural	ريفى	continue (d)	يستمر
festival	مهرجان	improve (d)	يحسّن
actually	بالفعل	laugh (ed)	يضحك
accessible	يمكن الوصول إليه	cough (ed)	يسعل (يكح)
washing machine	غسّالة	repair (ed)	يصلح
enough	كافي	volunteer (ed)(n)	يتطوع / متطوع



Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic	Meaning
pavement	رصيف الشارع	the part that you walk on in a city that is next to a road
leisure	وقت الفراغ	time when you are not working
facilities	مرافق	equipment, rooms, etc. that people can use to do something
equal opportunities	فرص متساوية	having the same chances[1] in life as other people
elderly	عجوز	old or becoming old
neighbourhood	حي سكني	a small area of a town and the people who live there
encourage	يشجع	try to make people do something by giving support[2] and advice
deliver	يوصل	take a letter or object to a building
make a difference	يُحدِث فرق	have a good effect[3] on a person, place or situation

Arabic Meaning

١-فرص
٢-دعم
٣-تأثير

Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions		Prepositions	
start a project	يبدأ مشروع	at a meeting	في اجتماع
make streets safer	يجعل الشوارع أكثر أمنًا	put up lights	يعلق مصابيح
people of all ages	الناس من كل الاعمار	amazed by	مذهول من
works of art	أعمال فنية	live on a boat	يعيش على قارب
do well	يحسن صنعًا	a problem for	مشكلة لـ
find work for	يجد عمل لـ	learn about	يتعلم عن
open a business	يفتح شركة	stop .... from	يمنع ..... من ...
have a better education	يحصل على تعليم أفضل	aim to	يهدف إلى

Word Differences

safe	آمن	save	ينقذ/يوفر

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
learn	يتعلم/يعرف	learnt	learnt
see	يرى	saw	seen
put	يضع	put	put
find	يجد	found	found

Language Notes

1) make

- **make + object مفعول + adj** يجعل

Ex. Smoking can make you ill.

- **make + object مفعول + inf مصدر الفعل** يجعل

Ex. Exercises make the heart beat faster.

2) work

- **work** عمل - اسم لا يعد

Ex. I have got much work to do.

- **work** عمل فني أو أدبي - اسم يعد

Ex. My dad has got the complete works of Naguib Mahfouz.

3) the + adjective = a noun

• بعض الصفات إذا سبقتها أداة التعريف the تحول إلى اسم جمع ويليها فعل جمع :

the elderly	كبار السن	the disabled	المعاقين
the rich	الأغنياء	the young	الشباب
the poor	الفقراء	the dead	الموتى

Ex. The rich should help the poor.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What time do you start .... ? **B:** At 8 am.
   a) work b) works c) a works d) a work
2. The music made the baby .... relaxed.
   a) feel b) feels c) feeling d) felt
3. We should help and respect ....
   a) elderly b) the elderly c) as elderly d) more elderly



SB Page (23)

Fareed : I think the best thing about our community[1] is the facilities[2]. We have some great shops and places to go to, like the library.

Salah : Yes, I think we have a very strong community. We have lots of community projects where we can volunteer to help people, especially[3] the elderly[4].

Fareed : Yes, we're starting a project next month where young people are going to help the elderly learn more about technology.

Salah : We have really good leisure activities here, too - sports facilities and the children's playground[5], for example. There are lots of places where families can enjoy being outside together.

Fareed : That's right, but I think we could improve our equal opportunities. Our pavements, for example, are not accessible for all and make it difficult for disabled people to use them.

Salah : You're right. They're discussing this problem at the next community meeting, actually.

Fareed : We should go.

Salah : Good idea!

Arabic Meaning

١- مجتمع
٢- مرافق
٣- خاصة
٤- كبار السن
٥- ملعب



SB Page (24)

The Decent Life Initiative[1]

The Decent Life Initiative is an exciting plan that is really making a difference[2] to about 32 million people who live in rural[3] areas in Egypt. The initiative aims to improve the quality of public services[4]. It provides more health care[5], better education[6] and better job opportunities[7]. Since 2019, the Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water. It has also helped to repair their houses and it has sent doctors to the villages to deliver[8] medicine and help people who are ill. It has also improved[9] facilities for disabled[10] people, and is helping more children to have a better education by building schools in the villages. In addition[11], young people will also be encouraged[12] to find out about the interesting new businesses[13] The Decent Life Initiative is opening, which can give them work.

The Decent Life Initiative will continue[14] to help people in poor neighbourhoods[15] around the country. It plans to help to find work for more than five million young people. That really is an amazing plan!

Arabic Meaning

١- مبادرة حياه كريمة
٢- تحدث فرق
٣- ريفي
٤- خدمات عامة
٥- رعاية صحية
٦- تعليم
٧- فرص عمل
٨- يسلم
٩- يحسن
١٠- معاق
١١- بالاضافة الي ذلك
١٢- يشجع
١٣- شركات
١٤- يستمر
١٥- احياء سكنية

WB Page (86)

I live in a great community. There are lots of sports activities[1] for young people, such as volleyball[2] and tennis clubs. There are also many local[3] facilities for people of all ages, including[4] a great theatre[5] and the history museum. Our roads[6] have wide[7] pavements, so it is not a problem for disabled people to travel around. I help at one of the community projects, too. We help the elderly to learn about the latest[8] technology. My grandmother sends a lot of text messages[9] now!

Arabic Meaning

١-أنشطة رياضية
٢-لعبة الكرة الطائرة
٣-محلي
٤-مشتملاً على
٥-مسرح
٦-طرق
٧-واسعة
٨-الأحدث
٩-رسائل

Exercises on Lessons



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are many young people in our ...., so I have lots of friends who live near me! WB

   a neighbourhood b room c space d air

2. What time are they going to .... the new washing machine? WB

   a ask b type c iron d deliver

3. Dad always walks on the .... He is really careful.

   a road b pavement c floor d water

4. The government tries to improve the public .... such as transport and health care.

   a services b snow c floors d ages

5. My mother always .... my sister to learn how to cook.

   a encourages b feeds c thinks d repairs

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Policemen work hard to make streets **<u>saver</u>**. (............)
2. Running is a very useful sports **<u>active</u>**. (............)
3. Great people can really **<u>do</u>** a difference to our life. (............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I met a/an .... woman aged 80 yesterday.
   a elderly b young c crowded d hurt
2. The new initiative has made a .... to many people.
   a company b crowd c floor d difference
3. Watching television is the most popular .... activity.
   a sports b leisure c reading d running
4. Teachers should .... students. That helps them study harder.
   a stop b know c encourage d refuse
5. " .... " means to take a letter or object to a building. SB
   a Deliver b Encourage c Surprise d Discuss
6. They are building a new sports .... in our city.
   a army b facility c screen d rocket
7. He travelled to London where he lived in a quiet ....
   a aquarium b museum c funfair d neighbourhood
8. Egypt tries to improve the system of the health ....
   a care b cave c team d idea
9. Everyone in our school can get the first prize. Everyone is given a/an .... opportunity.
   a excited b safe c friendly d equal

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I always wait for the bus on that **platform**. (..............)
2. I was really happy because I did **will** in my exam. (..............)
3. The most important thing here is the **save** streets. (..............)



1- The present continuous tense (زمن المضارع المستمر)

Form التكوين

I → am
He / She / It / (اسم مفرد) → is
We / They / You / (اسم جمع) → are
+ V-ing.

Ex. He is playing tennis.

Usage الاستخدام

١- للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (فى وقت الكلام)

Ex. They are sitting in my English class.

٢- للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام):

Ex. She is doing a course in Cairo University.

٣- للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة:

Ex. We are painting the school this week.

٤- للتعبير عن أحداث مرتب لها في المستقبل (مثل حجز تذاكر السفر / الترتيب لإقامة حفل) حيث يتم تحديد المكان والزمن.

Ex. We are starting a project next month.

تذكر: الكلمات الآتية غالبًا ما تعبر عن استخدام المضارع المستمر:

- arrange (v) يرتب
- prepare (v) يجهز
- arrangements (n) ترتيبات
- preparations (n) تجهيزات

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Look!	انظر!	Look out!	احترس!	still	مازال
Listen!	استمع!	at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	now	الآن
Watch out!	احترس!	at present	في الوقت الحاضر		

Remember: will + inf.

-تستخدم (will + inf) للآتي:

١- للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل بناء على رأى شخصي دون وجود دليل.

٢- اتخاذ قرارات سريعة

٣- تقديم الوعود

Ex. I think it will be hard but fun at university.

Ex. The phone is ringing. I will answer it.

Ex. I will get you the camera you like.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... my homework now.
   a) do b) doing c) am doing d) does
2. We .... to the club tonight.
   a) are going b) go c) goes d) going
3. Are you .... your aunt tomorrow?
   a) visit b) visiting c) visited d) visits

2- Adjectives ending in (-ing) or (-ed)

١- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) والصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.

٢- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (-ing) إلى من/ما يسبب الصفة:

Ex. Hassan is amazing. (مدهش/ يسبب الدهشة للآخرين)

Ex. The animals were frightening. (يسبب الرعب)

٣- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (-ed) إلى أن الموصوف يشعر أو لديه هذه الصفة:

Ex. Hassan is amazed. (شاعر بالدهشة)

Ex. The animals were frightened. (شاعر بالرعب)

ادرس الصفات التالية فكلها ينطبق عليها القواعد السابقة:

interested	متشوق	interesting	شيق
tired	مُتعب	tiring	مُتعِب
relaxed	مسترخي	relaxing	مريح للأعصاب
amazed	مندهش	amazing	مدهش
excited	مُتحمس	exciting	مثير
bored	شاعر بالملل	boring	ممل
disappointed	مُحبَط	disappointing	مُحبِط
surprised	مندهش	surprising	مدهش

Drills

Rewrite جزء تدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

• ١- لاحظ المتساويات الآتية :

- am / is / are + V-ing = have / has arranged to + inf.

1) I have arranged to travel to America next week. (travelling)

• نحذف (have arranged to travel) ونستخدم (am travelling) التي تعبر عن ترتيبات مسبقة لفعل شيء بدلاً منها.

Ex. I am travelling to America next week.

2) **Have you arranged to visit your sick aunt tomorrow?** (visiting)

- يستخدم (Are ... ...ing) بدلاً من (Have / Has + ... + arranged to + inf) للسؤال عن حدث مستقبل مرتب له

Are you visiting your sick aunt tomorrow?

- لاحظ المتساويات الآتية

will + inf = { - have / has just decided to + inf
- expect / promise to + inf }

3) **I have just decided to send an e-mail to Ali.** (will)

- نعبر بـ (have just decided to) عن قرار سريع اتخذناه ولذلك نستخدم هنا (will)

I will send an e-mail to Ali.

4) **I expect Leila to come first in the competition.** (will)

- يستخدم (will) بدلاً من (expect to) لأن الجملة تعبر عن تنبؤ بدون دليل.

Leila will come first in the competition.

5) **I promise to buy you a bike.** (will)

- يستخدم (will) بدلاً من (promise to) لأن الجملة تعبر عن وعد.

I will buy you a bike.

6) **The work was tiring, so Ali asked for a rest.** (tired)

- يستخدم (tired) هنا نحول الصفة (tiring) التي تعني (متعب) إلى (tired) التي تعني (متعب):

Ali was tired because of the work, so he asked for a rest.

7) **I was disappointed about the result.** (disappointing)

- يستخدم (disappointing) بمعنى (محبط) نبدأ الجملة بالشيء الذي يسبب الإحباط وهو (the result):

The result was disappointing.

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was .... to hear that the community centre was closing. SB
   a) disappointing b) disappointed c) tired d) relaxed
2. I did well in my exams. I was really .... because I found the questions difficult. SB
   a) relaxed b) surprised c) surprising d) relaxing
3. .... you study English at the moment?
   a) Do you study b) Are you studying
   c) Did you study d) Are you studied
4. We have booked the tickets. We .... tomorrow morning.
   a) travels b) will travel
   c) are going to travel d) are travelling

5. Are you and your friends .... today's match?
   a going to watch   b will watch   c watch   d watches

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The film was really interesting. I liked it. (interested)
....
2. He feels relaxed when he listens to music. (relaxing)
....
3. We have arranged to visit the Giza Zoo next week. (visiting)
....
4. We are giving a party next week. (arranged)
....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. This new project is **amazed**. It helps a lot of poor people. (..........)
2. I was **surprising** when Omnia won the prize. (..........)
3. Amal **comes** to live in Giza next month. (..........)
4. Muhamed and Ali **tidy** their room at the moment. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB

1. They .... this problem at the next community meeting.
   a discussed   b are discussing
   c were discussing   d are discussed
2. Are you having a party .... ?
   a yesterday   b tomorrow   c last week   d a week ago
3. I can't see you tomorrow. I .... my relatives.
   a visited   b was visiting   c am visiting   d going to visit
4. Hossam .... married tomorrow.
   a get   b got   c was getting   d is getting
5. Today's maths lesson was very .... I learned a lot. WB
   a interested   b interesting   c bored   d boring
6. The children are very .... because they have a new toy! WB
   a excited   b exciting   c tired   d tiring
7. The walk over the mountains was beautiful, but it was very .... WB
   a tiring   b tired   c boring   d bored

8. The tourists were very .... to see snow on the Pyramids. WB

(a) surprised (b) surprising (c) bored (d) boring

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- We have arranged to meet Mrs Noha tomorrow at 8. (meeting)

2- They are playing a match next week. (arranged)

3- We were amazed at the painting. (amazing)

4- He was excited to see the result. (exciting)

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The match was **bored**, so I stopped watching it. (............)
2. Salma **cooks** dinner now. (............)
3. They are **bought** a new house next month. (............)
4. He was **disappointment** when he lost the match. (............)

Writing

Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

"What you can do to help poor people in your community"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What interesting ideas do you have to help them?
- Why could these ideas make a difference to them?
- How do you feel about it?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I was .... to see how many people are poor in my community.
- I work for a/an .... in my community.
- We have a/an .... plan that can make a difference to them.
- We help people in a lot of villages to ....
- I really feel .... about that.

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26-28 WB pages 88-89

Key Vocabulary

noticeboard	لوحة إعلانات	bench	مقعد طويل الشخص أو أكثر
leaflet	منشور/كتيب	graffiti	كتابة ورسوم على الجدران
lodger	ساكن/نزيل	tenant	مستأجر
social network service	خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية	pay (paid) for	يدفع (ثمن شئ)
		greet (ed)	يحيي شخص/يرحب بشخص

Adjectives & Nouns

kind	عطوف	kindness	عطف
dark	مظلم	darkness	ظلام
ill	مريض	illness	مرض
sweet	حلو الطعم	sweetness	حلاوة الطعم
weak	ضعيف	weakness	ضعف

Vocabulary

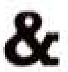
local newspaper	صحيفة محلية	office	حجرة مكتب
radio station	محطة إذاعية	furniture	أثاث
charity	جمعية خيرية	play	مسرحية
unwell	مريض	King Lear	الملك لير (اسم مسرحية)
experience	خبرة	stranger	شخص غريب
factory	مصنع	pollution	التلوث
forest	غابة	pleasant	سار - مبهج
traffic	حركة المرور	Lebanon	دولة لبنان
competition	منافسة/مسابقة	hall	قاعة
lost	مفقود - ضائع	message	رسالة
general	عام	donate (d)	يتبرع
historic	تاريخي	respect (ed)	يحترم
manager	مدير	join (ed)	يلتحق بـ
clearly	بوضوح		

Words & Meanings

greet	يحيي	say hello to or welcome someone
lodger	ساكن / نزيل	someone who pays to live in a room in someone's house
pay	يدفع (ثمن شيء)	give money for work someone has done
graffiti	الكتابة على الجدران	writing or pictures that people paint or draw on walls or buildings, although they shouldn't do this
noticeboard	لوحة إعلانات	a board[1] that people put on a wall to put messages on
social network service	خدمة الشبكة الاجتماعية	a website that allows you to communicate[2] and share information with people in your area
bench	مقعد طويل	a long seat[3] for two people or more
kindness	عطف	the quality[4] of being kind, helpful towards other people
tenant	مستأجر	someone who pays to live in a house

Arabic Meaning

١- لوح
٢- يتواصل
٣- مقعد
٤- ميزة - صفة

Expressions  Prepositions

have experience	لديه خبرة	kind to	عطوف على
give ...... a call	يتصل بـ	on the noticeboard	على لوحة الإعلانات
fail his exams	يرسب في امتحاناته	pleased by	مسرور من
people in need	الناس المحتاجون	surprised by	مندهش من
do work	يؤدي عملاً	by the river	بجوار النهر
for a rest	من اجل الراحة	covered in	مغطى بـ
sit on a bench	يجلس على مقعد	clean up	ينظف

Word Differences

social network	شبكة تواصل اجتماعي	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
graffiti	كتابة ورسوم على الجدران	calligraphy	فن الخط
leaflet	منشور / كتيب دعاية	leaf	ورقة شجر
note	ملحوظة	noticeboard	لوح إعلانات
bench	مقعد طويل	bank	بنك / ضفة نهر
pay for	يدفع ثمن شئ	buy	يشترى
greet	يحيي شخص - يرحب بشخص	meet	يقابل
lodger	نزيل	tenant	مستأجر
(شخص يؤجر غرفة من صاحب منزل ويسكن معه في نفس المنزل)		(شخص يؤجر مكان من صاحب منزل لا يعيش معه في نفس المنزل)	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
say	يقول	said	said
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
give	يعطي	gave	given
pay for	يدفع ثمن شئ	paid for	paid for

Language Notes

1) • Plural names of people

- من الممكن أن يجمع اسم الشخص بعد (the) ويكون المعنى (أفراد عائلة ......).

Ex. The Alis are visiting us tomorrow.

- من الممكن أن توضع أدوات النكرة (a/an) قبل اسم الشخص إذا كان المقصود شخص معين غير معروف بالنسبة للمستمع أو المتكلم.

Ex. A Hossan wants to meet you.

2) • try

• try + v-ing. يجرب ويرى النتيجة

Ex. Did you try turning the computer off and on again?

• try + to + inf. يحاول أن يفعل شئ (بمجهود)

Ex. I'm trying to learn Japanese but it's very difficult.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... wants to meet you.

   a A Dina b The Dina c Dinas d An Dina

2 A: I'm feeling hot. B: Why don't you try .... a medicine?

   a take b to take c taking d takes



SB Page (26)

Man: Thank you all for coming along to the meeting[1]. I'm going to show you a page on the whiteboard. Can you all see it clearly[2]?
Teen girl: What is the page from? Is it a website[3]?
Man: Yes, it's a website for the local community to share ideas, called a social network service page. We're going to start one, too. Is anyone interested in helping?
Woman: It's a very good way to communicate[4] with everyone - after all, not everyone can come to meetings. And it's much quicker and cheaper than delivering leaflets.
Teen boy: How do we start ?

Arabic Meaning
١- اجتماع
٢- بوضوح
٣- موقع على الانترنت
٤- بتواصل



SB Page (26)

Community Matters

Home
Map

Topics
For sale 85
Services and facilities
Projects New
Events
Lost and found
Charities and help
General

The kindness[1] of strangers[2]
Thanks to the kind person who helped my elderly neighbour last week. He felt unwell[3], and someone kindly helped him to a bench*[4] to sit on for a rest.

We need more trees!
A few of us are going to plant some trees along the streets. It will help with pollution[5] and also encourage more visitors to our town. Who is interested in joining[6] our project?

Computer repairs
Hi neighbours – I have experience[7] in repairing computers and the mobile phones. Give me a call if you need help!

Let's help those in need!
Please donate[8] food to people who don't have enough. Volunteers are also wanted to help deliver boxes.

Art class
The community centre is going to be closed on Saturday next week, from 4 pm – 7 pm, for an art class.

Graffiti[9]
I was disappointed to see the graffiti on the walls of the town hall[10]. This is a historic[11] building! What are we going to do about it?

Arabic Meaning
١- عطف
٢- أغراب
٣- مريض
٤- مقعد طويل
٥- تلوث
٦- يلتحق بـ
٧- خبرة
٨- يتبرع
٩- رسوم وكتابة على الجدران
١٠- قاعة
١١- تاريخي

Say it correctly
* bench
ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة (choose).


SB Page (28)

David Copperfield By Charles Dickens

I was working in the factory[1] when one day, my manager[2] greeted me. 'You have a visitor,' he said. 'This is Mr Micawber.'

'Pleased to meet you, David,' said the man. 'I'd like you to be my lodger[3].'

He took me to his house after work. It was as poor and old as he was. He lived there with his thin wife, their baby and two small children.

'I never thought that we would need a lodger,' said Mrs Micawber. 'But we don't have enough money, you see.'

I was ten years old and I had no help from my family, but my money from the factory paid for my food and room.

The Micawbers[4] were very kind, but they were even poorer than me. One day, Mrs Micawber said, 'We have nothing to eat in the house!'

I tried to give her some money.

'I can't take this,' she said. 'But we have some things that we can sell. Can you help us?'

So I sold some of their old books and furniture[5]. I gave the money to Mrs Micawber, and she was able to cook us all a healthy meal.

Arabic Meaning

١- مصنع
٢- مدير
٣- نزيل
٤- أفراد عائلة ميكاوبر
٥- أثاث

WB P. (88)

Events for next weekend

- Volunteers needed! Help us to clean up the park, 9 am
- Food market, from 8 am – 2 pm, by[1] the river
- Handball competition[2], starts 2 pm at the sports centre
- Famous architect[3] to talk at the new museum, 4 pm
- The Shakespeare play[4] *King Lear* at the theatre, 6 pm

Arabic Meaning

١- بجوار
٢- منافسة
٣- مهندس معماري
٤- مسرحية

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... of Tarek's English made him fail his exams. WB
   a sweet b sweetness c weakness d weak
2. When the teacher entered the classroom, we stood up to .... him.
   a explain b greet c talk d build
3. My neighbour made the boy .... for the glass window he broke.
   a push b repair c pay d talk
4. Mr Kamal died at home after a long ....
   a illness b ill c sweet d sweetness
5. We're going to paint the walls, which are covered in .... and old posters. SB
   a rocks b medicine c graffiti d gold

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The four students sat on a **bank** in the playground. (..................)
2. When I see the manager, I always **great** him. (..................)
3. I read a~ English **leaf** about technology. (..................)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The park is a pleasant place. I like to sit on a .... and relax. SB
   a bank b floor c fence d bench
2. We found out about the community project on the social .... service. WB
   a media b network c board d laptop
3. The teacher will put a message about the new art class on the .... WB
   a note b bench c noticeboard d floor

4. Samah opened the door to Mona and __________ her with a big smile.

   a) greeted b) broke c) happened d) owned

5. Ahmed had no money, so I had to __________ for the meal he had.

   a) buy b) intend c) look d) pay

6. I'll always remember the __________ people showed me when I first moved to this country. SB

   a) kindness b) noise c) illness d) disease

7. A __________ is someone who pays to live in a room in someone's house. WB

   a) tenant b) buyer c) seller d) lodger

8. My uncle has got a very big house __________ the river.

   a) for b) in c) by d) under

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The **ill** of Mr Ali made him stay at home. (   )
2. Dad has a lot of **experiment** in teaching. (   )
3. My father always listens to many local radio **stops**. (   )
4. The boys had a lot of work to **make**. (   )





Be going to + inf.

Statement / Negative	Question
فاعل + am / is / are (not) going to + inf.	Am / Is / Are + فاعل + going to + inf. ?

نستخدم (be going to) للتعبير عن التالي:

١- التنبؤ المبني على دليل (في المضارع):

Ex. There are a lot of clouds in the sky. It's going to rain.

٢- خطط مستقبلية أو أحداث قررنا فعلها مسبقا (التركيز هنا على النوايا والقرارات التي سبق اتخاذها)

Ex. We're going to start our own social network service.

الكلمات الآتية غالبا ما تعبر عن استخدام (be) going to

decide يقرر - decision قرار / plan يخطط - خطة / intend ينوي / intention نية

لاحظ الآتي

١- نستخدم be going to بعد think طالما أن هناك دليل

Ex. There are black clouds in the sky. I think it's going to rain.

٢- لاحظ الفرق بين (present continuous) / (be going to) في الأمثلة الآتية:

Ex. I'm travelling to Alexandria next week.

Ex. I'm going to travel to Alexandria next month.

- الجملة الأولى (present continuous) تعبر عن ترتيبات نهائية مسبقة بمعنى أنه تم حجز تذاكر السفر وعمل باقي الترتيبات.

- أما الجملة الثانية (be going to) فتعبر عن نية المتحدث دون الترتيب لذلك.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hossam is running fast; I think he .... the race.
   - a) will not win
   - b) is going to win
   - c) wins
   - d) is winning
2. Are you .... maths when you grow up?
   - a) going to study
   - b) will study
   - c) study
   - d) studies
3. I think she .... the exams.
   - a) will pass
   - b) pass
   - c) is going to pass
   - d) is passing



Drills

Rewrite جزء لتدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

- (be) going to + inf. = { - intend / plan to + inf.
- have / has decided to +inf.
- have / has an intention to +inf.



1) I have planned to spend my holiday in Alexandria. **(going)**

- نحذف (have planned to) ونضع بدلا منها (am going to) التى تفيد التخطيط لفعل ما.

I am going to spend my holiday in Alexandria.

2) He intends to sell his old car. **(going)**

- نحذف (intends to) ونضع بدلاً منها (is going to) التى تعبر عن النية لفعل شيئ.

He is going to sell his old car.

3) I have an intention to visit the Pyramids. **(going)**

- نحذف (I have an intention to) ونستخدم (I am going to) بدلاً منها.

I am going to visit the Pyramids.

4) Do you intend to go to the club? **(Are)**

- نحذف (Do) والجزء (intend to) ونستخدم (Are you going to) بدلاً منهم.

Are you going to go to the club?

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** What are your plans for the weekend? **B:** I .... my grandparents.
   a) am going to visit b) am visited c) visit d) will visit
2. Nada is always late. I'm sure she .... late tomorrow, too.
   a) will be b) is being c) is d) is going to be
3. **A:** Would you like tea or coffee? **B:** Mmmmmm, I .... coffee.
   a) am having b) am going to have c) will have d) has
4. It's starting to rain. I .... the umbrella.
   a) am going to put up b) am putting up c) will put up d) put up

5. Perhaps I .... New York one day.

a am visiting
b will visit
c am going to visit
d visit

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The engineer intends to build a new villa. (going)

....

2. We plan to spend the weekend in Matrouh. (going)

....

3. We have arranged to take the train to Luxor. (going)

....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. What are you **go** to do about the problem? (..........)
2. We are going to **cleans** our flat next week. (..........)
3. He has decided to start his own business. He **opens** a shop. (..........)
4. What are you going to **doing** for tomorrow's exam? (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ashraf .... engineering next year. That's his plan.

a is studied
b is going to study
c studying
d studies

2. I think it .... hot next week.

a will be
b is going to be
c is being
d is

3. Are they .... their bedroom tomorrow?

a painted
b going to paint
c will paint
d paint

4. I'm sure he .... the exam next week.

a is going to
b will fail
c is failing
d fails

5. They .... for a meal tonight.

a come
b comes
c are coming
d going to come

6. Ayman .... a friend tomorrow. He has arranged everything.

a meets b is meeting c going to meet d meet

7. I got a bad mark in my exam. My parents .... angry with me.

a are going to be b will be c are being d were

9. The car's engine is too hot. It ....

a won't work b is not going to work

c isn't worked d don't work

10. **A:** I don't know how to use the calculator. **B:** Don't worry, I .... you.

a will show b am showing

c am going to show d shows

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. What do you plan to do after you finish your study? (going)

....

2. The maths lesson is at 10 am tomorrow. (starts)

....

3. Nadine intends to visit Paris next year. (going)

....

4. We expect Adel to finish his work on time. (will)

....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. My father **aren't** going to stay in Luxor. (........)
2. Where are they going to **watched** the film? (........)
3. Are you **gone** to meet your friend Ali? (........)
4. He is studying hard. He **will** pass his exams. (........)

Lessons 5,6 & 7

SB pages [illegible] WB pages [illegible]

Key Vocabulary

windsurfing	رياضة ركوب الأمواج	castle	قلعة
formal	رسمي	tourist attractions	معالم الجذب السياحي
informal	غير رسمي		

Important Expressions

Firstly	أولاً	However	ومع ذلك
To start with.........	بداية......	but	لكن
Furthermore	علاوة على ذلك	To summarize.........	بإيجاز.......
In addition,	بالإضافة لذلك	To conclude.	خلاصة....../ باختصار.......

Vocabulary

perhaps	ربما	happiness	سعادة
Heisa	قرية هيسا النوبية بأسوان	above (prep)	بالأعلى
pleasure	سرور	suddenly	فجأة
anymore	أكثر من ذلك	warmly	بحرارة
language	لغة	ending	نهاية
castle	قلعة	proud	فخور
adult	شخص بالغ	the same	نفس الشيء
that's why	لهذا السبب	contact (ed)	يتصل بـ
daughter	ابنة	introduce (d)	يقدم (شخص)
front door	باب أمامي	treat (ed)	يعامل
building	مبنى	sound (ed)	يبدو

Words & Meanings

formal	رسمي	correct or polite for important situations
informal	غير رسمي	correct for unimportant or everyday situations

Expressions  Prepositions

feel tired	يشعر بالتعب	complete a project	يكمل مشروع
say thank you to	يشكر	In fact	في الحقيقة
get bored	يصيبه الملل	have a rest	يأخذ راحة
look exciting	يبدو مثير	treat ...... with	يعامل ...... بـ
plan a project	يخطط مشروع	proud of	فخور بـ
help each other	يساعدوا بعضهم البعض		

Word Differences

invite	يدعو	invent	يخترع
contact	يتصل بـ (بدون حرف جر)	communicate with	يتواصل مع

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
meet	يقابل	met	met
know	يعرف	knew	known
beat	يهزم	beat	beaten

Language Notes

1) not ...... anymore / no longer

- **not ..... anymore** (لم يعد (للتعبير عن حدث ثم التوقف عن فعله وتكون جملته منفية)

  Ex. My father doesn't smoke anymore.

- **no longer** (لم يعد (للتعبير عن حدث ثم التوقف عن فعله وتكون جملته مثبتة)

  Ex. My father no longer smokes.

2) as - like

- **as + وظيفة** (تستخدم بمعنى كـ ......)

  Ex. My dad works as an engineer.

- **like ....** تستخدم بمعنى (مثل) التشبيه

  Ex. Ali is clever at maths. He teaches like a teacher.

3) In addition - Furthermore - in addition to

• **Furthermore, + فاعل + فعل** علاوة على ذلك

• **In addition, + فاعل + فعل** بالإضافة إلى ذلك

- تستخدم كلا من Furthermore / In addition في بداية الجملة الثانية التي بها معلومة إضافية ويأتي بعدهما (,) comma ثم جملة كاملة (فاعل ثم فعل).

Ex. My father always goes to work on time. In addition / Furthermore, he does his work well.

• **in addition to + V- ing./n.** بالإضافة إلى

- تستخدم (in addition to) في بداية الجملة أو فى المنتصف ويليها (V-ing./n.).

Ex. In addition to exercising every day, he never smokes.

Ex. I have ordered cheese in addition to eggs.

4) formal - informal

• **formal language** اللغة الرسمية: تستخدم مع أشخاص لا نعرفهم أو ذو مكانة أعلى

Ex. You usually use formal language with people you don't know.

• **informal language** اللغة غير الرسمية: تستخدم مع أشخاص نعرفهم مثل الاسرة والأصدقاء

Ex. You usually use informal language with friends and family.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar doesn't live in Cairo ....
   a) no longer b) since c) ago d) anymore
2. Mr Hossam works .... a doctor in a big hospital.
   a) like b) as c) such d) so
3. He is very clever. ...., he works really hard.
   a) But b) However c) Furthermore d) In addition to



SB Page (29)

Narrator : One
Fares : Hi, there, Omar!
Omar : Hello, Fares!
Fares : Do you know my cousin, Adam?
Omar : No, I don't.
Fares : Adam, meet Omar. Omar, meet Adam.
Omar : Nice to meet you, Adam!
Adam : Nice to meet you, too.
Narrator : Two
Samira : Hi, there Ola!
Ola : Hello, Samira! Have you met Randa? She's just started working at our office[1].
Samira : No, we haven't met. It's a pleasure[2] to meet you.
Randa : Pleased[3] to meet you, too, Samira!
Narrator: Three
Sara : Good morning. I'd like to introduce[4] myself. I'm Sara. I'm your new neighbour.
Lamar : Pleased to meet you, Sara! I'm Lamar, and this my mother, Mrs Mansour.
Sara : Pleased to meet you both.
Mrs Mansour : It's a pleasure to meet you, too, Sara. Welcome to our neighbourhood[5]!

Arabic Meaning

١- حجرة مكتب
٢- سرور
٣- مسرور
٤- يقدم شخص
٥- حي سكني

WB Page (90)

A
Mrs Laila : Good morning, class. I'd like to introduce myself. I'm your new teacher, Mrs Leila.
Class : Good morning, Mrs Leila.
B
Father : Heba, I'd like you to meet our new neighbour, Mr Baher.
Heba : Pleased to meet you, Mr Baher.
Father : This is my daughter, Heba.
Mr Baher : Pleased to meet you too, Heba.
C
Hamdi : Hi Basel. Do you know my friend, Imad?
Basel : No, I don't.
Hamdi : Basel, meet Imad. We're in the same football team.
Basel : Nice to meet you, Imad.
Imad : Nice to meet you, too.



Firstly[1], let me see how much we all love our Children's Library. However[2], it now needs some work. The children don't like it anymore[3] because it looks old and needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again.

At our community meeting, we decided to improve[4] the building. We want to invite[5] you to help us. We got some ideas from the *Mashrou El Saada* community project. You can see a photo of their work above. Every year, a group of people go to Heisa[6], near Aswan, to paint the houses in 'colours of happiness'. We are going to do the same thing here! It will make our library look exciting. Furthermore[7], the library will become a tourist attraction[8].

To conclude[9], we are looking for volunteers to help us plan[10] and complete[11] the project. If you are interested, please contact me!

Arabic Meaning

١- أولا
٢- بالرغم من ذلك
٣- لم يعد
٤- يحسن
٥- يدعو
٦- قرية هيسا
٧- علاوة على ذلك
٨- مكان جذب سياحي
٩- يختتم
١٠- يخطط
١١- يكمل

SB Page (31)

I'd like to say thank you to the young woman who helped me yesterday. I was walking along the pavement when I suddenly[1] felt very tired. I'm elderly, you see. A young woman saw me and greeted me warmly[2]. She encouraged me to sit down on a bench and have a rest[3]. It was so wonderful to be treated[4] with such kindness. That's why[5] I'm so happy to live in this neighbourhood. Our community is so kind and helpful!

Arabic Meaning

١- فجأة
٢- بحرارة
٣- راحة
٤- يعامل
٥- لهذا السبب

SB Page (31)

Adam : Are you enjoying that book, Amr?

Amr : No, not really. In fact, it's quite boring.

Adam : What kind of books are you interested in?

Amr : I like exciting stories. I thought this one looked good, but as soon as I started reading it, I was disappointed.

Adam : I read it last year, but I thought it was amazing! The ending is surprising.

Amr : Well, your review makes it sound very interesting. Perhaps I should finish it!

WB Page (91)

Firstly, let me say how proud[1] we are of the castle[2] in our town. However, it now needs some work. People love walking on top of the castle walls, but some of them are dangerous. Also, some people leave rubbish inside the castle.
At our community meeting, we decided to improve the castle. We are going to get some builders[3] to repair the walls.
Furthermore, children at the school are going to help clean up the rubbish.
To conclude, we think that the castle is going to look amazing and will become a tourist attraction.

Arabic Meaning

١- فخور
٢- قلعة
٣- عمال بناء

WB Page (92)

One day, I saw a message on the noticeboard by the front door to our flats. It said that Mr Maher, who is very elderly, needed a new bench. The one he sits on outside his flat is broken. So I encouraged all my neighbours to help to buy him a new one. Some men delivered it this morning. Mr Maher was very surprised when it arrived! Mr Maher was very pleased by our kindness. Our neighbourhood is very friendly and we like to help each other.

Videoscript

Narrator: There are many amazing projects that help communities in Egypt. Some of these projects help people, such as this one which helps people to get fresh water, and some help the environment, like these volunteers taking rubbish from rivers.
Bassita is a company that organises[1] community projects. For example, the VeryNile* projects help to clean the River Nile. They take lots of rubbish, such as plastic, from the river. They then recycle[2] the plastic. Some of the plastic they collect is going to become shopping bags.
Another project provides clean water for many people. The Makhad Trust* helps people in the Sinai Peninsula[3].
They teach people to keep bees. These bees are going to make honey[4], which we use for food. The Makhad Trust also creates[5] gardens so people can grow their own food.
Are there any community projects where you live? What do they do to help your community?

Arabic Meaning

١- تنظم
٢- يعيد تدوير
٣- شبه جزيرة سيناء
٤- عسل
٥- تنشئ

* **VeryNile** منظمة تهتم بتطوير وسائل تنظيف النيل من المخلفات، وإعادة تدوير القمامة البحرية.
* **The Makhad Trust** مؤسسة في المملكة المتحدة تعمل على الحفاظ على البيئة والتراث الطبيعي للشعوب.

Exercises on Lessons 5-6 & 7

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You usually use .... language with people you don't know. WB
   a formal b informal c scary d shiny
2. You usually use .... language with friends and family. WB
   a informal b famous c angry d formal
3. A .... is a large strong building, built to protect the people inside from attack.
   a tower b castle c pyramid d block
4. The Giza Pyramids are one of the important tourist .... in Egypt.
   a statues b museums c attractions d guides
5. He slept for 10 hours. .... , he felt tired when he work up.
   a So b That's why c However d For

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The Sphinx is a famous tourist **attractive**. (....................)
2. To **conclude** with, I'd like to introduce myself. (....................)
3. He will go **windsurf** tomorrow morning. (....................)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was very hungry. .... , I was not able to finish my pizza.
   a However b So c That's why d Firstly
2. Mr Mahmoud is helpful. In .... , he is a hard worker.
   a start b plus c information d addition
3. To .... , this is a clever plan to follow.
   a become b let c mean d summarize
4. The king decided to build a .... to protect his family.
   a funfair b castle c playground d prison
5. "Hi" is a/an .... way of greeting people.
   a informal b different c formal d funny
6. The two men treated the poor children .... much kindness.
   a with b at c for d on

7. When the old man left our house, we .... thank you to him.

a) told b) asked c) ordered d) said

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. We use **informal** language with Mr Hossam, the new manager. ( )
2. She was very ill. **Furthermore**, she went to school. ( )
3. He is really kind. In **add**, he is really smart. ( )

Language Functions

Formal and informal greetings — التحية الرسمية وغير الرسمية

Formal greetings	Informal greetings
Hello. Have you met ....? أهلا / مرحبا. هل قابلت ....؟	Hi أهلا
How are you? كيف حالك؟	How is it going? كيف تسير الأمور؟
Pleased to meet you. من اللطيف مقابلتك.	Adam, meet Omar. آدم، هذا عمر.
I'd like to introduce myself. أود تقديم نفسي.	I'd like you to meet my friend. أود أن تقابل صديقي / صديقتي.
It's a pleasure to meet you. من السرور أن أقابلك.	Pleased to meet you, too. من اللطيف مقابلتك أيضا.
Have you been introduced to...? هل قابلت ....؟	Have you been introduced to...? هل قابلت ....؟
	Nice to meet you. سعدت بلقائك.

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hassan and Nabil are discussing the weekend plan.

Hassan : Hi, Nabil! Do you know my friend Adel?

Nabil : ❶ ....

Hassan : Well, would you like to join us? We are painting the school walls tomorrow.

Nabil : Sure. ❷ ....?

Hassan : At 8 am.

Nabil : Where can we meet?

Hassan : ❸ ....

Nabil : ❹ ....?

Hassan : Yes, most of our friends are coming to help.

Nabil : OK. ❺ ....

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You are with your cousin. You meet a friend of yours who doesn't know your cousin. SB

....

2. It is your first day as a volunteer at a community project. Introduce yourself to another volunteer student. SB

....

3. You are with your parents when you meet a friend. Introduce your friend to your parents. SB

....

Writing

Write an email of about 110 words:

to you friend Doaa about a project in your community. SB

- **Your name is Hana and your email address is hana16@yahoo.com.**
- **Your friend's email address is doaa15@gmail.com.**

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- **What is the community project?**
- **How are you going to help in the project?**
- **Do you need volunteers? Why?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I'm really proud of ....**
- **We plan to improve ....**
- **We want to invite you to help us.**
- **We got some ideas from ....**
- **We are looking for volunteers to ....**

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast. She is really ....
   a amazed b amazing c boring d bored
2. The manager will be here .... five minutes.
   a at b in c out d away
3. .... everyone here visiting the museum tomorrow?
   a Are b Were c Was d Is

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Badr is going to study in London when he grows up. (intention)

....

2. We have arranged to go to Alex next month. (going)

....

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hala and her friends plan to help improve a castle near their house.

Mother : What are you going to do with your friends today?

Hala : ❶ ....

Mother : That's a good idea. ❷ ....?

Hala : We are going to get some builders to repair the walls.

Mother : What about the rubbish?

Hala : ❸ ....

Mother : ❹ ....?

Hala : Because we want it to become a tourist attraction.

2 Read and match:

A	B
1. The children are	a. are interesting.
2. Young people will be interested	b. in the new businesses.
3. The new ideas	c. to London on Monday morning.
4. You're carrying too much.	d. I will open the door for you.
5. Omnia is flying	e. excited to hear about the trip.

Answer 1-...... 2-...... 3-...... 4-...... 5-......

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A project in your community"

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب)

....

....

....

....

General Exercises on Unit 3

A Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue

Injy and Lina are talking about a book.

Injy : Are you enjoying that book, Lina?

Lina : ❶ .... It's quite boring.

Injy : ❷ .... ?

Lina : Well, I think the first chapter is disappointing.

Injy : What kind of books are you interested in?

Lina : ❸ .... They make me excited.

Injy : ❹ .... ?

Lina : I'm going to read Sherlock Holmes.

Injy : ❺ .... ?

Lina : He is a famous detective.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1. You are with your friends when you meet your brother. Introduce your brother to your friends.

....

2. It is your first day at your new street. Introduce yourself to your neighbour.

....

3. You are with your sister. You meet a friend of yours who doesn't know your sister.

....

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In my country, the summer holidays start around the start of June. The children get some rest because they don't have to come to school on those days and spend time with their family. Kids are encouraged to go out and play in the evenings, read more books and watch cartoons with a little control. Parents should encourage their children to be more active and creative during summer breaks so that they don't turn lazy. Cold foods like ice-cream, cold drinks, fruits, etc. are enjoyed by everyone in the heat of the summer.

Many families plan trips during this time and go to beaches. Some of the popular summer sports are swimming, tennis, table tennis and chess. Children can draw, sing, and write. Parents also should take the children to spend time with **their** grandparents, and other relatives for there is no better time than holidays to visit family relatives.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When do the summer holidays start?

....

2. What should parents encourage their children to be?

....

3. Which foods are enjoyed in the heat of the summer?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Kids are .... to go out, play and watch cartoons with a little control.
   a. visited b. spent c. written d. encouraged

5. The underlined word **"their"** refers to the ....
   a. children b. parents c. family d. grandparents

6. .... is a popular summer sports.
   c. Swimming b. Running c. Football d. Reading

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was sunny, so we were surprised by the .... of the forest. WB
   a. darkness b. dark c. kindness d. kind

2. There were lots of kids in my .... when I was young.
   a. playground b. sky c. screen d. neighbourhood

3. I volunteered to help clean the .... from the walls of the museum. WB
   a. calligraphy b. bricks c. air d. graffiti

4. Tourists are always pleased by the .... of the Egyptians. WB
   a. kind b. kindness c. illness d. ill

5. My grandfather likes to sit on a .... in the park and watch the birds. WB
   a. bank b. bench c. fence d. sofa

6. I love London. I .... there next year.
   a. will probably go b. is probably going
   c. probably going d. am probably going

7. Have you heard that Maher .... to the USA next month?
   a will go   b going to go   c is going   d goes
8. We were all very .... when we heard about our next class trip. SB
   a bored   b boring   c excited   d exciting
9. "That is a very .... building," said the architect. SB
   a interest   b interested   c interesting   d interests
10. This museum is .... There are so many old things here. WB
   a amazing   b amazed   c bored   d boring

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. We have arranged to buy new mobiles next month. (buying)

....

2. I promise to buy you a nice present after you succeed. (will)

....

3. I think the science lessons are never boring. (bored)

....

D Writing

6 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The people here are **exciting** about the new initiative. (..................)
2. This project aims **for** help poor people. (..................)
3. All of us are proud **on** our great monuments. (..................)
4. The work of scientists **does** a difference to our life. (..................)

7 Write an email of about 110 words

"Leisure and sports facilities in your town" WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

....

....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. **Do you have leisure and sports facilities in your town?**
2. **What leisure and sports facilities has your town got?**
3. **How are they useful?**
4. **Do you or your friends go there? Why?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

1. **We have many leisure and sports facilities in my town.**
2. **We all love .... We can .... there.**
3. **My friends and I like going there every ....**
4. **My sister and her friends usually .... there.**

Review A

SB pages 32-33 WB pages 93-94

Key Vocabulary

supermarket	سوبر ماركت	café	مقهى
bus station	محطة أتوبيس	car park	موقف سيارات
restaurant	مطعم	sports centre	مركز ألعاب رياضية
monument	أثر (تاريخي)	school	مدرسة
museum	متحف	Nature reserve	محمية طبيعية



SB Page (32)

Narrator 1

Voice : From the bus station, go straight on and walk past the monument. Then, turn right and it is opposite the museum.

Narrator 2

Voice : From the bus station, go straight on and then take the second road on the left. It's on the left, opposite the nature reserve.

Narrator 3

Voice : From the supermarket, walk past the bus station and turn right. Go straight on and it's on the corner, opposite the café.

Narrator 4

Voice : From the restaurant, walk past the monument then turn right at the monument. Then take the first road on the left. It's on the left, next to the car park.

WB Page (94)

Man : Good afternoon, I'd like to make a complaint[1].
Assistant : What's the problem ?
Man : I ordered something from your website[2], but it hasn't arrived.
Assistant : I'm very sorry about that. What did you order?
Man : A black kettle[3].
Assistant : A black kettle? Why don't you come to our shop? We have one here .You don't have to pay[4] anything more.
Man : Thank you .Where is your shop?
Assistant : It's next to the museum. From the station, turn right and walk past[5] the clothes shop. We are on the left.
Man : What time do you open?
Assistant : We open from 8 am to 4 pm every day except[6] Friday.

Arabic Meaning

١- شكوى
٢- موقع الكتروني
٣- غلاية
٤- يدفع مال
٥- يمشي مارا بـ
٦- عدا - باستثناء


Reading
موضوعات القراءة
SB Page (32)

Museum of Natural Science

Last year, there was an amazing exhibition of sea animals at the Museum of Natural science. While visitors were walking around the exhibition, they could also watch videos and listen to the sounds of the sea. Next year, another exhibition will tell visitors about animal life in the desert.

Many people think that the desert doesn't have much life in it. This exhibition will show that lots of animals live there, if you know where to look!

The exhibition opens on the 5th of March. Tickets will be on sale now from the museum or online.

SB Page (33)

Tarek



I'm really excited about this week as I'm going to start my new volunteering job! My basketball team are going to play basketball with some disabled children and teach them about the game. I love children (I have three younger brothers and sisters) so I think it will be really fun. I'm happy I can volunteer with my friends, too. I think it is important that people help their community.

Judy



My friend and I are looking for some volunteer work. We want to help elderly people or young children. We both like little children! We are going to ask at local community centres about reading to elderly people and local schools about helping young children to read. We read a lot in our spare time but we want to do something useful for other people.

WB Page (93)

Good morning, everyone. I'd like to introduce myself. I'm Judy and I work for See the best of Cairo. Today, you're going to visit two places. They are not the most famous ones, but we think they are the best! Why? Because they are neither full of tourists nor expensive, but they have some very interesting things to see.
Firstly, in the morning, we're taking you to the Egyptian Railway Museum. It opens at 9 am. Here you'll find trains but also some other historical forms of transport, including planes. The museum is next to Cairo train station. Then, at about 2 pm, we're going to the House of Gamal Al-Din Al-Dahabi. This is one of the oldest houses in the city, built in the seventeenth century. It has beautiful windows, doors and even a fountain. We know you won't be bored in either of these places!

General Exercises on Review (A)

A Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hany and Omar are talking about a problem in their village.

Hany : Hello, Omar! ❶ ....?

Omar : Hello, Hany! I'm thinking about a problem.

Hany : ❷ ....?

Omar : Many people in our village are poor and don't find clean water.

Hany : What do you think we can do to help them?

Omar : ❸ ....

Hany : We can also help deliver medicines to their houses.

Omar : ❹ ....

Hany : When can we start?

Omar : ❺ ....

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations

1. Your friend suggests going to the museum and you agree.

   ....

2. Your friend asks you which way you like to travel from Tanta to Alex.

   ....

3. You are with your cousin. You meet a friend of yours who doesn't know him.

   ....

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mustafa's train was late and it reached Ismailia after midnight. It was his first visit to the city, and he didn't know where to go. He thought he would go to a cheap hotel where he would not have to pay a lot of money, but he did not know how to find one at that hour.

Mustafa asked a worker in the station to get him a cheap room. The worker said

that if Mustafa gave him twenty pounds, he would take him to one. But, Mustafa disagreed and walked out of the station.

Mustafa wandered through the streets and asked a number of people, but could not find a cheap place to sleep. He sat down on a park bench to think about what he should do next. He was very tired and fell asleep on the bench. He woke up the next morning and he smiled when he realised that it was the cheapest night he could ever imagine.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Mustafa sleep in the park?

....

2. Where did Mustafa reach after midnight?

....

3. What did the worker ask Mustafa for?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Mustafa wanted to find a cheap ....

a) city b) hotel c) station d) park

5. He went to Ismailia on a ....

a) bus b) metro c) car d) train

6. Mustafa seemed to be .... the next morning.

a) sad b) stupid c) happy d) bad

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Trams are ...., so they are better for the environment than other types of transport. SB

a) ancient b) noisy c) messy d) electric

2. If you want to travel across the desert, you must have a good ....

a) mop b) map c) mat d) model

3. About 350.000 .... use that train every week.

a) travels b) passengers c) drivers d) speakers

4. Are you going to the museum .... Saturday? SB

a) at b) on c) in d) for

5. The restaurant .... at 06:30 tonight.

a) open b) opening c) opens d) is opens

6. There are many local .... for the elderly in my village.
   a facilities b problems c comments d areas
7. Are you .... your aunt next week?
   a going to visit b am visited c visited d visit
8. The house was .... in green and yellow on my birthday party.
   a killed b built c bought d decorated
9. This shop is .... interesting nor cheap. Let's go to a different one. WB
   a either b both c neither d none
10. The grey carpet is nice but I prefer the blue, red and orange one because it's .... WB
   a more colourful b as colourful c the colourful d few colourful

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Do you intend to watch that play? **(going)**

....

2. He is clever. He is helpful, too. **(both)**

....

3. It's my habit to work at night. **(always)**

....

D Writing

6 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. None of **the boy** wanted to leave the party. (....................)
2. That project aims **with** help the disabled. (....................)
3. We should **great** the teacher when he enters the classroom. (....................)
4. The TV isn't working. Is it plugged **at**? WB (....................)

7 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

"The best and worst items of technology in your house" WB

....

....

....

....



Young people

UNIT 4 Have you ever travelled by plane?

Objectives

Reading:

A report about experiences; texts about life experiences; The Adventures of Tom Sawyer and The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn; a text about someone's life

Writing:

A story about something that happened in your life; a timeline of a person's life events; a biography of a person

Listening:

An interview about someone's life; an account of something bad that happened to someone

Speaking:

Talking about experiences; asking and answering questions about experiences; telling a story

Language:

The present perfect with ever, never, for and since

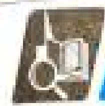
Life Skills: Communication

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 34-37 WB pages 95-96

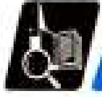
Key Vocabulary

experience	تجربة حياتية/خبرة	play (ed)	يعزف موسيقى - يلعب
musical instrument	آلة موسيقية	snorkel (led)	يغطس باستخدام أنبوب
orphanage	ملجأ للأيتام		



Important phrases

ride a horse	يركب حصان	make food	يحضر/يُعد طعام
travel by plane	يسافر جواً (بالطائرة)	visit an orphanage	يزور ملجأ
sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة	see a film	يشاهد فيلم
try food	يجرب طعام	climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل
drink coffee	يشرب قهوة	win a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
write a list	يكتب قائمة	do the housework	تقوم بأعمال المنزل
be to a football match	يذهب لمباراة كرة قدم	go to a farm	يذهب إلى مزرعة
snorkel in the sea	يغطس تحت سطح البحر باستخدام أنبوب	swim in a pool	يسبح في حوض سباحة
		play a musical instrument	يعزف على آلة موسيقية



Vocabulary

ever	أبداً	sensitive	حساس/مرهف
most	معظم	opportunity	فرصة
even	حتى	alone	بمفرده
the same	نفس الشيء	then	آنذاك
grandfather (grandad)	الجد	headache	صداع
grandmother (grandma)	الجدة	wedding party	حفل زفاف
favourite	مفضل	(be) born	يولد
hobby	هواية	move (d)	ينتقل (يعزل)
flat	شقة	marry (ied)	يتزوج
fewer	أقل عدداً	try (ied)	يجرب طعام - يحاول
elderly people	كبار السن		

Words & Meanings

Word	Meaning	Arabic Meaning
experience تجربة حياتية	something that happens to you	
snorkel يغطس باستخدام أنبوب	swim with your face under water using special equipment[1]	١- معدات
orphanage ملجأ للأيتام	a large house where children who are orphans[2] live and are taken care of[3]	٢- أيتام ٣- يُعتنى بهم
musical instrument آلة موسيقية	something that you use for playing music, such as a piano	

Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions		Prepositions	
all (of) his life	طوال حياته	for a long time	لفترة طويلة
get / be married	يتزوج	wait for	ينتظر
over 50 years	ما يزيد عن ٥٠ عام	a lot of	كثير من
have a headache	مصاب بصداع	live in	يعيش فى
do a hobby	يمارس هواية	on business	فى مهمة عمل
(be) friends with	صديق لـ	on time	فى الوقت المحدد
ask ....about	يسأل.....عن	travel by air	يسافر جواً (بالطائرة)
know about	يعرف عن	good at	جيد فى
learn about	يتعلم عن	move to	يعزل / ينتقل إلى

Word Differences

experience	تجربة حياتية - خبرة	experiment	تجربة فى المعمل
snorkel	يغطس (باستخدام أنبوب)	dive	يغطس (بمعدات تنفس)
plane	طائرة	plan	خطة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
ride	يركب (حيواناً - دراجة)	rode	ridden
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
meet	يقابل - يتقابل	met	met
bear	تلد	bore	born
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
make	يصنع - يحضر/ يُعد	made	made
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
know	يعرف	knew	known

Language Notes

1) ride - drive

- ride (rode / ridden) (a horse / a camel / a bike / a bus) يركب (حيوانًا / دراجة / أتوبيس)

Ex. Have you ever ridden a horse?

- drive (drove / driven) يقود (سيارة / أتوبيس)

Ex. My father showed me how to drive his new car.

2) it + be + adjective + to + inf.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة لوصف حدث معين.

Ex. Do you think it is important to learn about the history of your family?

3) on time - in time

- on time في الوقت المحدد تمامًا

Ex. Have they arrived at school on time?

- in time في الوقت المناسب (قبل الميعاد بقليل)

Ex. Hassan has arrived at the station in time.

4) by - in - on

- نستخدم **by - in - on** مع وسائل المواصلات كما يلي:

١- نستخدم **by** أمام كل وسائل المواصلات إذا لم يأتي بينهما فاصل.

by car - by train - by plane - by boat - by ship - by bus - by bike

لكننا نقول **on foot** بمعني سيراً على الأقدام

٢- إذا جاء بينهما فاصل مثل (a / the) أو أي صفة ملكية أو ('s) الملكية:

نستخدم **in** مع (car - taxi)

in (a / the / my) car - in (a / the) taxi.

ونستخدم **on** مع باقي وسائل المواصلات.

on the bus - on the train - on a bike - on my horse - on Samy's bike

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can .... a camel at the Giza Pyramids area.
   a) drive b) bear c) ride d) carry
2. It's necessary .... the seat belt while driving.
   a) to wear b) to wearing c) wear d) wearing
3. You must go to your work .... time.
   a) for b) at c) in d) on
4. Have you ever travelled .... plane?
   a) on b) by c) in d) for



Reading موضوعات القراءة SB P. (35)

I asked the people in my class about their experiences[1]. Most[2] people in the class have played a musical instrument[3]. Not many people have ridden a horse[4] or slept in a tent[5]. Even[6] fewer people have snorkelled*[7]. Most people in the class have never travelled by plane[8], but Hazem has travelled by plane three times! I also asked, "Have you ever been to a football match[9]?" About half the people in the class haven't been to a football match and about half the class have.

Arabic Meaning



*snorkel — انطق الحروف الملونة في هذه الكلمة مثلما تنطق الحروف الملونة في كلمة door

WB Page (96)

Judy: Dad, how long have you worked at the bank?
Dad : I've worked there since we moved to Cairo.
Judy: How long have you lived in Cairo?
Dad : We've been in Cairo since you were born, but we lived in a different flat then.
Judy: How long have you lived in this flat?
Dad : Well, we've lived here for ten years.
Judy: So my brother Imad has always lived here?
Dad : Yes, he's nine now, so he's lived here for all of his life.

Tapescript نصوص الاستماع SB Page (36)

Talia : Grandma, how long have you lived in this house?
Grandmother : Oh, I've lived here since I got married to your grandfather.
Talia : Really? How long have you been married to grandad?
Grandmother : We've been married for fifty years!
Talia : That's a long time!
Grandmother : Yes, it is! And we've known each other since we were ten years old.
Talia : That's like Mum and Dad. They've known each other for a long time, too. And I've lived in the same house since I was born.

Grandmother : Yes, your mum and dad have lived in that house since 2008. Before that, they lived with me here for five years.

Talia : Did they? I didn't know that!

Grandmother : You've never asked me about it before!

Videoscript

SB Page (35)

Tourist have come to Egypt for hundreds of years to see the wonders[1] of the ancient world, such as the Pyramids, temples and other monuments[2].

It is a wonderful experience for them. Tourists have also come to experience the wonderful natural world, such as the desert and the Red Sea.

There are lots of activities[3] to do by the Red Sea. Some people love relaxing[4] on the beach, while others like doing something more exciting, like snorkelling.

Snorkelling has been popular for many years and people have come to Egypt to swim in the Red Sea for a long time. Dahab has been a popular destination[5] since the 1960s. This is because the water here is among the best in the world for snorkelling. There are beautiful coral reefs[6] and there are some amazing sea animals, such as this dugong[7] and these lionfish[8]. Have you ever been to Dahab? Have you ever been snorkelling?

Arabic Meaning

١- عجائب
٢- آثار
٣- أنشطة
٤- يسترخي
٥- وجهة / مقصد
٦- الشعب المرجانية
٧- أطوم «حيوان بحري كبير الحجم»
٨- سمكة التنين

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You have to get a passport and a ticket to travel .... plane.
   a by   b on   c in   d at
2. Visiting the zoo is an exciting .... for kids.
   a experiment   b exam   c experience   d exercise
3. Tourists like to go .... along the Red Sea beaches.
   a marrying   b snorkelling   c studying   d cooking
4. When she lost her parents, she was sent to a / an ....
   a cage   b bank   c cinema   d orphanage
5. Before you learn to .... a horse, you must to be able to get on it.
   a walk   b drive   c ride   d kill

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I can't **drive** a horse? (..........)
2. The piano is a musical **equipment**. (..........)
3. I have a lot of **experiments** in my life. (..........)
4. My cousin's **feeding** party was yesterday. (..........)
5. My dad often travels **in** business. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you .... a headache, take this medicine.
   a have b see c catch d fill
2. Pupils in that school learn about musical ....
   a matches b tools c pavements d instruments
3. My dad always travels .... plane; it's fast.
   a in b by c on d at
4. My cousin is .... married next month.
   a getting b coming c giving d having
5. Have you ever .... Chinese food.
   a trained b tested c tried d treated
6. It takes hours of practice to learn to .... the guitar.
   a plan b blow c fly d play
7. You will need special equipment to .... that mountain.
   a snorkel b climb c ride d play
8. We went camping last month and slept in a ....
   a school b lake c tent d torch
9. Our manager always comes to work .... time. He's a successful man.
   a on b by c in d about

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Most people in the desert sleep in **beds**. (..........)
2. Yesterday's accident was a bad **experiment** for me. (..........)
3. My family lives in a **flag** with four rooms. (..........)
4. When I was young, my parents **walked** by plane many times. (..........)
5. My grandparents got **marriage** 50 years ago. (..........)



1- Remember: The past simple tense تذكر: زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	نفى	استفهام
فاعل + فعل فى التصريف الثاني	فاعل + didn't + inf.	(كلمة استفهام) Did + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords كلمات دالة yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

Usage استخدام يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى وقت محدد فى الماضى

Ex. 1. She played the piano yesterday.
2. She didn't try food from other countries.
3. Did she drink coffee yesterday?
- Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

2- The present perfect tense زمن المضارع التام

Form التكوين

• يتكون زمن المضارع التام من:

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has ('s) + p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + have ('ve)+ p.p. التصريف الثالث للفعل

Ex. They have ('ve) ridden a horse.
Ex. He has ('s) travelled by plane.

Negative النفى

• نفى زمن المضارع التام كالآتي:

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has + not (hasn't) / never + p.p.
I / We/ You / They / اسم جمع + have + not (haven't) / never + p.p.

Ex. I have not (haven't) played a musical instrument.
Ex. He has never driven a car.

Question السؤال

• السؤال بـ «هل»:

Has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + p.p. ...?
Have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع) + p.p. ...?

Ex. Have you been to a football match?
Ex. Has she climbed a mountain.

للإجابة عن السؤال بـ «هل» نقول:

- Yes, she has.
- No, she hasn't.

• السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

كلمة استفهام + has + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + p.p. ...?
كلمة استفهام + have + (you / they / we / اسم جمع) + p.p. ...?

Ex. Where has Ali gone?

Usage الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن المضارع التام في الحالات الآتية:

١- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه (تجارب حياتية في الماضي past experiences):

Ex. I have visited an orphanage.

٢- لوصف حدث تم في الماضي ولا يزال أثره موجود:

Ex. Look what you have done; who will clean the floor?

٣- لوصف حدث تم حديثًا «أي قبل قليل»

Ex. I have just made a cake.

• تأتي الكلمات الآتية عادة مع زمن المضارع التام:

- just	في الحال / توا	- recently	حديثًا
- already	بالفعل	- lately	مؤخرًا
- yet	حتى الآن	- ever	سابقًا / من قبل
- since	منذ	- never	أبدًا
- for	لمدة		

• سيتم شرح استخدام yet / already في Unit (5) بالتفصيل.

just توًا

• تدل (just) على أن الحدث وقع منذ فترة قصيرة - وتستخدم مع الجمل المثبتة - وتوضع بالجملة بعد الفعل المساعد has / have – وقبل التصريف الثالث:

• I have just met Ali at the supermarket.

لاحظ التالي

- تساوي just (a short time ago / a moment ago) في المعنى ولكنهما يستخدمان مع زمن الماضي البسيط

Ex. I have just done my homework. = I did my homework a moment ago.

ever في أي وقت / أبدًا

- تستخدم (ever) إما في الجمل الاستفهامية أو بعد صيغة التفضيل أو مع الجملة المنفية:

Ex. Have you ever met an actor?

Ex. Mona is the cleverest girl I have ever known.

Ex. I haven't ever driven a car.

never أبداً / مطلقاً

- تستخدم للنفي:

Ex. I have never spoken Spanish.

Ex. My father has never smoked.

always دائماً

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام always مع المضارع التام لتعبر عن دوام حدوث الحدث وعدم إنتهاءه:

Ex. Ashraf has always lived in Cairo.

Ex. Osman has always loved fish.

recently / lately حديثاً / مؤخراً

- يمكن أن تأتى فى بداية الجملة أو نهايتها أو بين جزئى الزمن.

Ex. I have bought a new house recently.

Ex. Recently, I have bought a new house.

Ex. I have recently bought a new house.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... my room. It's clean now.
   a haven't cleaned
   b has cleaned
   c have cleaned
   d will clean
2. Why .... the police?
   a he has called
   b has he called
   c he called
   d he calls
3. I've .... played a musical instrument.
   a ever
   b ago
   c never
   d ago
4. Sawsan has been to Sinai desert ....
   a recently
   b just
   c ever
   d never

since منذ / **for** لمدة

- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام مع since (ويأتي بعدها نقطة زمنية أو تعبير زمني يدل على توقيت بداية الحدث

- وكذلك يستخدم مع for (ويأتي بعدها المدة الزمنية التي استغرقها الحدث حتى وقت الكلام):

Ex. I have lived in Tanta since 2010.

Ex. I have lived in Tanta for 11 years.

since		for	
Friday	الأيام	a day - two days - a week - 3 weeks	
August	الشهور	a month - two months...... etc.	
2010	السنين	a year - 2 years - a long time........ etc.	
2 o'clock	الساعات	an hour - four hours........ etc.	
last (week-month-year...)	...السابق	the last (week - month - year.........)	
...... he went........	ماضي بسيط	a short time - several years - a few weeks	
then	منذ ذلك الحين	ages	
winter	فصول السنة	a while	برهه (فتره قصيرة)
yesterday	الأمس	a decade	عقد
his birth / childhood / death		a century	قرن
the age of...........		as long as I can remember	على قدر ما اتذكر
Christmas	المناسبات	three seasons	ثلاث مواسم
the 18th century	القرون	all (of) his life	طوال حياته

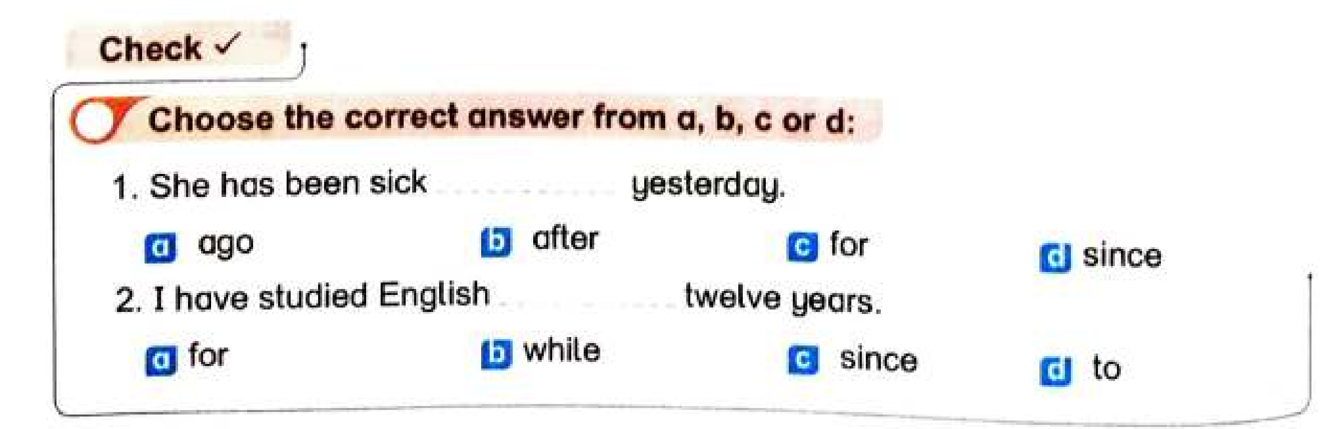
• إذا تم استخدام **since** كرابط بين جملتين يأتي بعدها فعل في الماضي البسيط (إذا كان حدث منتهي) - والفعل الآخر يكون في المضارع التام:

Ex. I have lived in the same house since I was born.

Ex. Your mum and dad have lived in that house since 2008.

Ex. We have been married for over 50 years.

Ex. They have known each other for a long time.



Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She has been sick .... yesterday.
   a) ago b) after c) for d) since
2. I have studied English .... twelve years.
   a) for b) while c) since d) to

The present perfect passive — المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع التام

• نستخدم صيغة المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون الحدث في الجملة أهم من الفاعل الذي قام به:

Ex. The project has been completed in a short time

• يتضح من صيغة الجملة السابقة أن الأهم هو أن المشروع اكتمل وليس مهماً من قام بذلك.

لتحويل المضارع التام إلى صيغة المبنى للمجهول نقوم بالآتي:

١- نبدأ بمفعول الجملة المبنية للمعلوم كنائب فاعل في الجملة المبنية للمجهول.

٢- نحدد هل سيبقى فعل have / has كما هو أم سيتغير حسب نائب الفاعل الجديد.

٣- نضع been والتصريف الثالث للفعل بعد have / has.

٤- نأتي بفاعل الجملة المبنية للمعلوم ليصبح مفعولاً في الجملة المبنية للمجهول مسبوقاً بكلمة by ويمكن الاستغناء عنهما.

فاعل + have / has + p.p... + مفعول

المفعول يصبح نائب فاعل + have / has + been + p.p. + (by بواسطة + الفاعل)

Ex. They have painted the house.

Ex. The house has been painted (by them).

نفي زمن المضارع التام في المبني للمجهول كالآتي:

نائب الفاعل + have / has not + been + p. p.

Ex. The dishes haven't been washed yet.

Ex. The next date for our match hasn't been decided yet.

نسأل عن زمن المضارع التام في المبني للمجهول كالآتي:

(كلمة استفهام) Have / Has + نائب الفاعل + been + p.p......?

Ex. Have the statues been put into the museum?

Ex. How has the lazy student been punished?



١- يمكن أن نستخدم (بواسطة by) قبل الفاعل لنقول من أو ما قام بالحدث

Ex. The prize has been won by a fifteen-year-old boy.

٢- عادة لا نستخدم by إذا كان الفاعل People / Somebody / Someone

Ex. Someone has stolen my money.

- My money has been stolen (~~by someone~~).

٣- عادة لا نستخدم by إذا كان الفاعل معروف

Ex. My car has been repaired (~~by the mechanic~~).

- عند التحويل من المبني للمجهول للمبني للمعلوم في زمن المضارع التام نتبع عكس الخطوات السابقة أي نأتي بالفاعل الموجود بعد (by) ونجعله فاعل الجملة الجديدة ثم نضع have / has حسب الفاعل الجديد يليهما p.p مباشرة ونحذف been

by الفاعل + have / has + been + p.p. + by + نائب فاعل

نائب الفاعل يصبح مفعول + have / has + p.p. + الفاعل بدون

Ex. This picture has been drawn by a fifteen-year-old boy
= A fifteen-year-old boy has drawn this picture.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My bag .... I can't find it.
   - a) have been stolen
   - b) has stolen
   - c) has been stolen
   - d) have stolen
2. The building .... by an earthquake.
   - a) has been damaged
   - b) has damaged
   - c) damaged
   - d) damages
3. The students in my class .... told about the date of the exam yet.
   - a) hasn't been
   - b) haven't been
   - c) have
   - d) didn't

How long.....? كم المدة.......؟

• نستخدم السؤال بـ How long....? مع المضارع التام عندما نسأل عن أمر ما حدث في الماضي ومستمر حدوثه حتى الآن.

Ex. How long have you been married?

Ex. How long have you lived in your house?

• إذا كان الجواب عن الأسئلة السابقة يعبر عن مدة زمنية نستخدم (for).

Ex. I have been married for ten years.

• وإذا كان الجواب بداية حدوث الفعل نستخدم (since)

Ex. I have lived in my house since 2010.

لاحظ الآتي

- نسأل عن الماضي البسيط بـ How long ago.....?

Ex. How long ago did you join this club?
- I joined it two years ago.

- نستخدم When للسؤال عن الماضي البسيط ولا نستخدم المضارع التام.

Ex. When did you buy this car?
- I bought it two years ago.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... have you driven a car?

a How heavy b How long c How many d How much

2. A: How long has Sally had a mobile phone?

B: She has had a mobile phone .... a year.

a for b when c ago d since

have / has been - have / has gone

لاحظ الآتي

١- لاحظ الفرق في الاستخدام بين التعبيرات التالية:

have / has been to - have / has gone to - have / has been in / at

have / has been to	ذهب إلى مكان ثم عاد مرة أخرى
have / has gone to	ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد بعد
have / has been in / at	موجود في مكان

- He has been to London. = (He went there and came back).

ذهب إلى لندن وعاد

- He has gone to London. = (He is still in London).

ذهب إلى لندن ومازال هناك

- He has been in Alexandria for 3 days.

هو موجود الآن بالإسكندرية منذ ثلاثة أيام

- He has been at the stadium for five hours.

هو موجود بالإستاد منذ خمسة ساعات

٢- تسأل بالصيغ السابقة مع ever كالآتي:

Ex. Have you ever been to a football match?

وتجيب كالآتي

- Yes, I have already been to a football match.
- No, I have never been to a football match.



Drills

Rewrite جزء لتدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

1) Ola booked a cinema ticket a moment ago. (just)

- مطلوب هنا استخدم just فلابد من حذف a moment ago لأنها تساويها فى المعنى وتستخدم زمن المضارع التام.

Ola has just booked a cinema ticket.

2) I have just completed my maths homework. (ago)

- لاستخدام ago لابد من حذف just وإضافة (a moment ago / a shost time ago) وتحويل الزمن إلى ماضى بسيط.

I completed my maths homework a short time ago.

3) Amir has sold his old car since October. (How long)

- نسأل بـ How long مع المضارع التام ونحذف الإجابة since October.

How long has Amir sold his old car?

4) I have played chess for six years. (since)

- نحذف for ونستخدم since بعدها العام الذى بدأ فيه الحدث ونستخدم نفس الزمن.

I have played chess since 2015.

5) I haven't travelled by plane. (never)

- نحذف haven't ونستخدم have never.

I have never travelled by plane.

6) Someone has broken into the house. (been)

- من خلال الكلمة داخل الأقواس (been) يتضح أن المطلوب استخدام المبنى للمجهول has been broken
- لا تستخدم by لأن الفاعل Someone

The house has been broken into.

7) Why has the teacher punished the students? (been)

- السؤال هنا فى المبنى للمعلوم، ومطلوب استخدام been أى تحويله إلى مبنى للمجهول، يراعى تغيير has إلى have مع نائب الفاعل الجديد the students

Why have the students been punished by the teacher?

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Have you ever .... cake?
   a made b making c make d to make
2. A: Have you ever ridden horses?
   B: No, I have .... ridden horses.
   a ever b never c since d for
3. Hania .... tennis many times. SB
   a was played b play c have played d has played
4. Samy .... his arm in an accident last week.
   a broke b has broken c breaks d was broken
5. These kids .... visited the zoo since their birth.
   a never have b hasn't c haven't d didn't

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. No, I've never slept in a tent. WB (ever)

....

2. Nadia has just tidied up the house. (ago)

....

3. My sister started playing tennis when she was ten. (since)

....

4. Hatem has lived in Alexandria since 2019. SB (for)

....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Mr Sabri has **be** at this school since 2020. SB (..........)
2. Lama has **have** her phone for two years. SB (..........)
3. Hatem **have** lived in Alexandria for many years. (..........)
4. I have lived here **for** I was born. (..........)
5. Malak has been friends with Injy since they **are** children. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: Has he .... on time? WB
   B: Yes, he has.
   a finished b finish c finishes d to finish
2. Have you ever .... to Giza? SB
   a be b been c being d to be
3. Has Lina .... seen that film? SB
   a ago b since c never d ever
4. Have you ever .... Aswan in winter? WB
   a been to b gone to c been d gone
5. .... have you known your best friend? SB
   a When b How long c How often d How many
6. We've waited for the bus .... two hours. WB
   a since b yet c already d for
7. Kamal and Lina have been married .... last year. SB
   a since b just c for d ever
8. How long have Laila and Hassan .... married? WB
   a were b be c are d been
9. How long .... you enjoyed your favourite hobby? SB
   a have b are c has d do

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I have drunk two cups of coffee. WB (yesterday)
   ....
2. Yes, my mum has cooked the dinner. (Has)
   ....
3. Tarek has played handball for ten years. WB (since)
   ....
4. My teacher has taught us for three years. (How long)
   ....
5. I have never won a competition at school. WB (ever)
   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined word:

1. Your parents have lived here **for** 2008 ( )
2. How long have you **moving** house? ( )
3. Have you **never** played football? ( )
4. Lady has had a headache **since** an hour SB ( )

4 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

(إجابة عنه في آخر الكتاب)

"Experiences in your life"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What happened when you were a baby?**
- **Where did you live? With whom?**
- **What did you do when you were young?**
- **Have you ever been to another country?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **When I was a baby,** ....
- **I lived in** .... **with** ....
- **When I was young, I** ....
- **I visited** ....



Language Functions

Talking about experiences

التحدث عن التجارب الحياتية

- للسؤال والاجابة عن التجارب الحياتية التى مررت بها أو أحد أفراد عائلتك تقول:

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
A: Which people in your family have been to another country?	B: My father has been to England.
A: Has anyone in your family climbed a mountain?	B: Yes, my brother has climbed a mountain in Sinai.
A: Have any of your cousins got married?	B: No, none of my cousins has got married.
A: Have your parents always lived in the same house, or have they moved?	B: Yes, they have lived in the same house.

- ويمكن السؤال عن التجارب الحياتية باستخدام How long....? كالآتى:

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
A: How long have you lived in your house?	B: I have lived in my house since 2005.
A: How long have you been in this class?	B: I have been in this class for two hours.
A: How long have you known your best friend?	B: I have known my best friend recently.
A: How long have you had a phone?	B: I have had a phone since I was in preparatory one.
A: How long have you studied English?	B: I have studied English since I was four.
A: How long have you been at school today?	B: I have been at school today for an hour.
A: How long have you enjoyed your favourite hobby?	B: I have enjoyed my favourite hobby lately.

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue: SB

Talia is asking her grandmother about her experiences.

Talia : How long have you lived in this house?

Grandmother : I've lived here since ❶ ....

Talia : How long have you been married?

Grandmother : ❷ .... fifty years.

Talia : How long have you known each other?

Grandmother : ❸ .... we were at university.

Talia : ❹ .... ?

Grandmother : Yes, I've practised my hobby since I was ten.

Talia : ❺ .... ?

Grandmother : Your mum and dad have lived in that house since 2008.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask your friend if any of his / her brothers has got married.

....

2. Your friend asks you how long you have had a mobile phone.

....

3. Your friend asks you which people in your family have been to another country.

....

4. You ask your cousin about an experience he / she had.

....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38-40 WB pages 97-98

Key Vocabulary

deaf	اصم (أطرش)	adventure	مغامرة
hard of hearing	ثقيل السمع	care (d) about	يعتنى بـ
the countryside	الريف	join (ed)	ينضم لـ / يلتحق بـ
canoe	قارب ضيق خفيف / زورق	start (ed)	يبدأ
raft	قارب خشبى «مصنوع من جذوع الأشجار»	follow (ed)	يتبع
awake	مستيقظ	dream (n) (ed)	حلم - يحلم

Verbs & Nouns

learn a language	يتعلم لغة	start school	يبدأ الدراسة
learn sign language	يتعلم لغة الإشارة	move to another country	ينتقل لدولة أخرى
join a sports club	ينضم لنادى رياضى	win a match	يفوز بمباراة

Vocabulary

busy	مزدحم - مشغول	Syria	دولة سوريا
fun	ممتع/مسلى - متعة	the Opera House	دار الأوبرا
special school	مدرسة خاصة	amazing	مدهش
local school	مدرسة محلية	main	رئيسى
hearing problems	مشاكل فى السمع	chess club	نادى للشطرنج
aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	strange	غريب
concert	حفل موسيقي	environment	البيئة
sequel	تتمة/تكملة «كتاب/فيلم/مسرحية»	scared	خائف/مرعوب
sea animals	حيوانات بحرية	scare (d)	يخيف
handball club	نادى لكرة اليد	die (d)	يموت
dangerous	خطير	describe (d)	يصف
novel	رواية	prefer (ed)	يفضل
teenage boys	أولاد مراهقون	explain (ed)	يشرح /يفسر
fog	ضباب	float (ed)	يطفو
foggy	مليئ بالضباب		



Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic	Meaning
deaf	اصم (اطرش)	unable[1] to hear
sign language	لغة الإشارة	a language that uses hand movements[2] instead of[3] spoken words
join (ed)	ينضم لـ	to become part of a club
dream	حلم	pictures and sounds that you think are happening when we are sleeping
awake	مستيقظ	not sleeping
care about	يعتنى بـ	feel strongly about someone or something
raft	قارب خشبى «مصنوع عن جذوع الأشجار»	pieces of wood that are put together[4] so they can float on water
canoe	قارب ضيق خفيف	a long, narrow boat for one or two people
follow (ed)	يتبع	walk or drive behind someone

Arabic Meaning
1- غير قادر
2- حركات الأيدى
3- بدلا من
4- تجمع

Expressions  Prepositions

Expression	Arabic
since I was one	منذ عامى الأول
It's really fun.	إنه ممتع حقاً.
like the best	أفضل ما يحب
(be) called	تسمى/تدعى
(be) lost	يُفقد/يتوه
badly hurt	مصاب بشدة
help with	يساعد فى
look angry	يبدو غاضبا
have a dream	يحلم
stop......from	يمنع......من
say sorry	يتأسف/يعتذر
along the river	على طول النهر
call out	ينادى/يصيح

Preposition	Arabic
in the south of...	فى جنوب.....
since then	منذ ذلك الحين
get into	يدخل
interested in	مهتم بـ
travel in a canoe	يسافر فى قارب خفيف
used to	اعتاد أن
for a holiday	من أجل إجازة
on a raft	على قارب خشبى
float on water	يطفو على الماء
on holiday	فى أجازة
think about / of	يفكر فى
worried about	قلق بشأن

Word Differences

Word	Arabic	Word	Arabic
country	دولة	countryside	الريف
learn	يتعلم	teach	يُعلم
deaf	اصم (اطرش)	dumb	ابكم (أخرص)
scared	خائف/مرعوب	scary	مخيف/مرعب

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
hurt	يؤذي / يصيب	hurt	hurt
win	يفوز	won	won
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
fly	يطير	flew	flown
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Language Notes

1) special - private

- **special (adj)** خاص / مميز (من نوع خاص ليس عادي)

Ex. Deaf students go to special schools.

- **private (adj)** خصوصي (شخصي) يخص شخص واحد او مجموعة

Ex. Don't use my private tooth brush.

2) another - other - others

- **another +** اسم مفرد آخر (شئ إضافي)

Ex. Would you like to move to another county?

- **other +** اسم جمع أخرى

Ex. Osama has always loved fish and other sea animals.

- **others** (بدون اسم بعدها) **= other +** اسم جمع آخرون

Ex. Some people like playing chess. Others (Other people) don't.

3) awake - wake (woke/ woken) (up)

- **awake (awoke / awaken) = wake (up)** يوقظ / يستيقظ

Ex. It's 9 o'clock. I'll awoke my dad. / I'll wake my dad up.

Ex. I always awoke / wake up at 6 every day.

- **awake (adj)** مستيقظ

-تأتى عادة بعد فعل (be / stay)

Ex. I'll call Ali; I hope he is awake now.

Ex. The children usually stay awake until midnight.

4) lose - miss

- **lose (lost / lost)** يفقد (يضيع) شيء / يخسر «مباراة مثلاً»

Ex. I have lost my ticket. I need another one.

Ex. Our team lost the last match.

- **miss (ed)** يفوته شيء / يفتقد «يوحشه» شخص

Ex. I missed the bus, so I took a taxi.

Ex. I really miss my dad.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The deaf boy went to a .... school for deaf children.
   a) general b) strange c) special d) dangerous
2. Tom left his country and moved to .... one.
   a) other b) others c) an other d) another
3. Don't .... your dad; he needs to sleep well.
   a) awake b) walk c) a walk d) awoken
4. Her son was .... in the park yesterday.
   a) missed b) last c) lost d) loose





Maher

I have lived in a village(1) in the south(2) of Egypt all my life. I have never been to another country(3), but last year I visited Cairo with my uncle and my cousins! It was so big and busy(4), but it was fun(5). We went to lots of museums(6) because I am very interested in history(7).

Azza

I have had hearing problems(8) all my life and I learnt sign* language(9) from when I was a baby. When I first started school(10), I went to a special* school(11) for deaf *(12) children.

Now, I have been at a local school(13) for three years. I am the only hard of hearing(14) person in my class. Sometimes it is difficult, but I have a teacher who can use

Arabic Meaning

١- قرية
٢- جنوب
٣- دولة
٤- مزدحم
٥- ممتع / مسلي
٦- متاحف
٧- مهتم بالتاريخ
٨- مشاكل في السمع
٩- لغة الإشارة
١٠- يبدأ الدراسة
١١- مدرسة خاصة
١٢- أصم
١٣- مدرسة محلية
١٤- ثقيل السمع



sign language to help me. She explains[15] things I can't understand in sign language. Some of my friends have learnt some sign language, so they can help me, too.

Wael



My parents died when I was a baby so I have lived with my grandparents[16] since I was one. We used to[17] live in the countryside[18], but we moved to[19] the city three years ago. I like living here, there is lots to do. I joined[20] a handball club[21] and I have won[22] lots of matches with my team[23]. It's really fun.

١٥- يشرح
١٦- أجداد
١٧- اعتاد أن
١٨- الريف
١٩- ينتقل إلى
٢٠- ينضم إلى
٢١- نادى لكرة اليد
٢٢- يفوز
٢٣- فريق

Say it correctly

* sign — لا ينطق حرف (g) فى هذه الكلمة
* special — ينطق حرف (ci) فى هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (sh) فى كلمة (fish)
* deaf — ينطق حرفى (ea) فى هذه الكلمة مثل حرف (e) فى كلمة (ten)

SB Page (39)

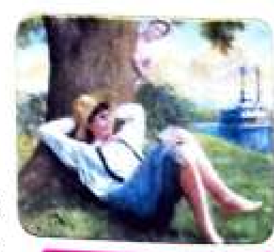


My name's Salma. I was born[1] in Syria but my family came to Egypt when I was five years old. We haven't visited Syria since I was very young, but some of my family still live there. When I was eight, I started playing the piano[2]. I have played in many concerts[3]. I love music. Two years ago, I played at a concert in the Cairo Opera House[4]. It was amazing[5]!

Arabic Meaning

١- ولدت
٢- يعزف على البيانو
٣- حفل موسيقي
٤- دار الأوبرا بالقاهرة
٥- مدهش

SB Page (40)



The Adventures[1] of Tom Sawyer

They did not see Tom all day. All the time that Tom was playing games in the forest[2], his Aunt Polly worried about him. She thought he was lost[3] or badly hurt[4]. She was so happy when he returned and told her that he was fine[5].

"It was just[6] a game, Aunt Polly" said Tom. "I'm sure it was a fun game[7] for you, but we all worried about you. We didn't know where you were. Why didn't you tell me?" "I told you in a dream[8]," said Tom. "I just forgot to tell you when I was awake[9]."

Arabic Meaning

١- مغامرات
٢- غابة
٣- يضل / يتوه
٤- يصاب بشدة
٥- بخير
٦- فقط
٧- لعبة ممتعة / مسلية
٨- حلم
٩- مستيقظ

"He never thinks of other people" said his cousin Mary. "Yes, you should think about other people," said Aunt Polly. "You know I care about[10] you Tom. Try to remember how other people feel."

"I'm sorry that I didn't tell you," said Tom. "It won't happen again."

١٠- يهتم بـ

SB Page (40)

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn



Jim and I were on a raft[1] going down the river when it became foggy[2]. I left the raft to try and find a place for us to stop for the night. I got into a small canoe[3] and went along the river. Then I tried to return. However, it was so foggy that I could not see the raft! I called out[4] but I could not hear Jim.

My canoe went down the river for a long way, and I hoped the raft was following[5] me. I travelled all night, but the next morning, it was not foggy and finally I saw Jim. He was sleeping on the raft.

I climbed on the raft and said, "Hello, Jim. Have you been sleeping?' "I was scared[6]!" he said. "I couldn't see anything because it was foggy!" He looked angry. "I had a terrible night , Huck!" he said. "It was like a bad dream[7]."

"I'm sorry," I said. From that time, I decided I would never scare[8] him again.

Arabic Meaning

١- قارب مصنوع من جذوع الأشجار
٢- مليء بالضباب
٣- قارب ضيق خفيف
٤- ينادي / يصيح
٥- يتتبع
٦- خائف/مرعوب
٧- حلم مزعج
٨- يخيف

WB Page (97)



Osama has always loved fish and other sea animals[1]. He started to like them when he visited an aquarium*[2] for the first time in 2015. His family have taken him to the aquarium every summer since then. Last year, the people at the aquarium asked him to help them give food to the fish. He loves doing that! He has helped at the aquarium in the school holidays for a year now. He has given food to most of the small fish, but he hasn't helped with the sharks. They are too dangerous!

Arabic Meaning

١- حيوانات بحرية
٢- معرض الأحياء المائية



WB Page (97)

Teen boy : I'm Ashraf. I've always lived in Cairo, but last year, I visited a village in the country for the first time. I loved it! It was very quiet!

Teen girl : My name's Magda. I've never been to England, but last week, I talked to my cousins. They were in London. They showed me some famous buildings there on their phone.

Woman : I'm Nawal and I have been an English teacher for ten years. I've always taught children, but last year, I started teaching older people, too. I've taught them a lot, but they don't learn as quickly as the children!

Exercises on Lessons



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He's .... He can't hear.
   a busy b local c deaf d sunny
2. The .... has many tanks of fish. SB
   a aquarium b concert c cave d countryside
3. To be healthier, you should .... a sports club.
   a follow b join c belong d learn
4. Children in Egypt .... school at the age of five.
   a finish b learn c get d start
5. When we were on holiday, we went down a river in a/an .... It was great fun. WB
   a canoe b sequel c aquarium d team
6. The hotel room was very noisy, so I was .... all night! WB
   a asleep b awake c scary d walk

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. When you aren't sleeping. You're **wake**. (............)
2. When I was sleeping yesterday. I had a beautiful **cream**. (............)
3. I asked mum to **walk** me up at 6 am. (............)
4. The **blind** use sign language to communicate with others. (............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children use old pieces of wood to make a/an .... , which they took to the river. WB
   a aquarium b raft c plane d ship
2. Our trip to Sinai was full of ....
   a adventures b characters c signs d courses
3. Like many young people, Azza and her brothers really .... the environment. WB
   a awake b scare c care about d dream
4. Last night, I had a strange .... I thought I was flying!
   a dream b concert c piece d novel
5. I use sign language because I'm hard of ....
   a sleeping b working c listening d hearing
6. The .... was attended by a large number of music lovers.
   a concert b wedding c match d test
7. I often visit my relatives in the .... It's really quiet there.
   a countryside b city centre c sports club d concert
8. The family has brought a teacher of .... language for their deaf child.
   a signal b sight c sign d fine
9. Mazin's father does not know the way to the beach, so his car can .... our car. WB
   a use b follow c pretend d trick

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. To **catch** this sports club, you have to fill in this form. (............)
2. A terrible accident **scored** me yesterday. (............)
3. Your **grandchildren** are your grandfather and grandmother. (............)
4. Mr Mahmoud works at **spicy** school for the blind. (............)
5. My uncle is a farmer, and he lives in a **city**. It's quiet there. (............)





Grammar

Remember: The past simple tense

تذكر : نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث منتهية فى الماضى. عادة ما نذكر متى حدثت.

- ارجع الى شرح زمن الماضى البسيط Lessons1/2

Ex. Last year, I visited Cairo.

Ex. We moved to the city three years ago.

تذكر : نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداث فى الماضى وليس من المهم ذكر وقت حدوثها.

- ارجع الى شرح زمن المضارع التام Lessons1/2

Ex. Some of my friends have learnt sign language.

ونستخدمه أيضا للتعبير عن أشياء لا زالت مستمرة الآن

Ex. I have never been to another country.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... have you been a teacher?
   a How much   b How often   c How long   d How many
2. We .... the library in Alexandria. WB
   a visited   b has visited   c were visited   d visiting
3. I love chess, so I .... joined a chess club in my village. WB
   a has   b have   c am   d was
4. I visited Luxor ten years ago. I haven't visited it .... then.
   a for   b just   c since   d ago
5. My sister .... two new languages since she left school. WB
   a learned   b is learning   c have learned   d has learned

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I have never visited Athens. WB (ever)
   ....
2. The teacher has been in the school since 7 am. It's 3 p.m now. WB (for)
   ....
3. Fawzy has been abroad since 2002. (How long)
   ....
4. I have just booked two tickets for both of us. (a moment ago)
   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. We haven't visited Syria since I **am** very young. (............)
2. Have you ever **move** to a new place? (............)
3. Last week, I **gone** to the park with my sister. (............)
4. My parents **get** married in 2000. (............)
5. When I was a baby, my parents **moves** to Alexandria. (............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Suzan .... to Paris last year.
   a travelled b has travelled c was travelling d travels
2. My parents got married .... 2001. WB
   a ago b in c for d since
3. Have you .... met a famous person?
   a never b since c yet d ever
4. We have .... moved house. We've always lived in the same place. WB
   a ever b just c never d always
5. Nahla is not here this week because she .... to France for a holiday. WB
   a has been b has gone c was being d had been

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Dalia has been deaf all her life. WB (since)

....

2. Has Adam ever eaten Chinese food. WB (never)

....

3. My cousins have lived in Cairo since January. WB (for)

....

4. I took an English exam yesterday. (When)

....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. What **has** Ahmed buy last week? (............)
2. Has Dalia **be** deaf all of her life? (............)
3. Why did he **wrote** this email? (............)
4. Two years ago, I **join** a sports club. (............)
5. She has talked to Samar **since** an hour. (............)

4 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب)

"A story you have just read"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What is the story about?
- Where did you get that story?
- What happened in the story?
- What was the end of the story?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Once upon a time, ...
- One day, ...
- Next, ... After that, ...
- In the end, ...



Language Functions

Asking and answering about personal experiences

السؤال والإجابة عن عن التجارب الحياتية الشخصية

- نسأل شخص عن تجربة حياتية مر بها باستخدام زمن المضارع التام مع ever كالآتى:

A: Have you ever moved to a new place?

- إذا كانت الإجابة عن السؤال بـ Yes نواصل الأسئلة لمعرفة المزيد باستخدام زمن الماضى البسيط باستخدام When / Where / Which كالآتى:

B: Yes, I have.

A: When did you move? Where did you move?

More examples

1- **A:** Have you ever been to a different country?
B: Yes, I have.
A: When have you been? Where have you been?

2- **A:** Have you ever joined a sports club?
B: Yes, I have.
A: Which sports club did you join?

3- **A:** Have you ever played a musical instrument?
B: Yes, I have.
A: Which musical instrument did you play?

4- **A:** Have you ever learnt different languages?
B: Yes, I have.
A: Which language did you learn?

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sama is asking Rawan about her personal experiences.

Sama : Have you ever got a prize?

Rawan : ❶ ....

Sama : ❷ ....?

Rawan : I got it two years ago.

Sama : ❸ ....?

Rawan : Because I wrote a story.

Sama : Did you get any other prizes?

Rawan : ❹ .... a medal in karate.

Sama : ❺ ....

Rawan : It's kind of you.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask your classmate about a personal experience he / she has had.

....

2. A friend asks you about the musical instrument you have played.

....

3. You ask your grandfather if he has ever been to a different country.

....

4. Your cousin asks you if you have ever learnt different languages.

....

Lessons 5, 6 & 7

SB pages 41-43 WB pages 99-101

Key Vocabulary

gymnastics	رياضة الجمباز	windsurfing	التزلج على الماء بواسطة الريح
dyslexia	صعوبة القراءة والتهجي	achieve (d)	ينجز/يحقق
results	نتائج	discover (ed)	يكتشف
huge	ضخم	volunteer (ed) (n)	يتطوع - متطوع
noisy	صاخب	windsurf (ed)	يتزلج على الماء بواسطة الريح

Vocabulary

storm	عاصفة	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
brain	المخ	wind	الرياح
surprised	مندهش	windy	شديد الرياح
art	الفن - الرسم	suddenly	فجأة
artist	فنان - رسام	scared	خائف/مرعوب
charity home	بيت خيري	space	الفضاء
timeline	خط زمني	spell (ed)	يتهجى
scientist	عالم	train (ed)	يتدرب/يدرب
exciting	مثير	paint (ed)	يرسم بالألوان
nearby	قريب	decide (d)	يقرر

Words & Meanings

discover	يكتشف	to find out some new information about something
dyslexia	صعوبة القراءة والتهجي	a learning difference[1] that some people are born with which means that they find it difficult to read or write
results	نتائج	This tells you how you have done in an exam.
volunteer	يتطوع	to offer to do something without expecting[2] any reward[3]
achieve	ينجز/يحقق	succeed in doing something good or that you want to do

Arabic Meaning

١- اختلاف
٢- توقع
٣- مكافأة

Expressions  Prepositions

Expression		Preposition	
tell a story	يحكى قصة	go swimming	يسبح
do a sport	يمارس رياضة	take ... back	يعيد
hurt her leg	تصيب ساقها	enjoy + v-ing	يستمتع بـ
find...... difficult	يجد.....صعب	part of	جزء من
have dyslexia	يعانى من عسر القراءة	proud of	فخور بـ
take an exam	يمتحن	in trouble	فى مشكلة/متاعب
get a prize	يحصل على جائزة	far from	بعيدا عن
get help	ينال المساعدة	volunteer at a charity	يتطوع فى جمعية خيرية
get good results	يحصل على نتائج جيدة		

Word Differences

draw	يرسم بالرصاص/بالفحم	paint	يرسم بالألوان
gymnastics	رياضة الجمباز	gymnasium	صالة للألعاب الرياضية
hurt	يصيب/يؤذى	heart	القلب
test	اختبار	exam	امتحان نهائى
spell	يتهجى	spill	يسكب
discover	يكتشف (شيء/مكان موجود)	invent	يخترع (شيء لم يكن موجود)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
draw	يرسم بالرصاص/بالفحم	drew	drawn
speak	يتكلم	spoke	spoken

Language Notes

1) How + adjective....?

تستخدم الصفة بعد (How) لتعنى (كم مقدار ....؟/ما مدى....؟).

Ex. How fast does Nihal speak?

Ex. How easy is it for you to understand Nihal?

وللإجابة عن هذا السؤال نستخدم ظروف الدرجة adverbs of degree

quite تماما - إلى حد ما / very جدا / too للغاية / not too ليس بشكل كبير + adj

Ex. Nihal speaks very fast / not too fast.

Ex. She writes not too fast / quite fast.

Ex. It's very easy for me to understand Nihal.

2) feel - fall - fail - fill

- **feel (felt / felt)** يشعر

Ex. You will feel better after you take that medicine.

- **fall (fell / fallen)** يقع/يسقط

Ex. Amal fell and hurt her leg.

لاحظ أننا نقول fall asleep بمعنى (يغلبه النعاس)

- **fail (ed)** يفشل/يرسب (في)

Ex. Although she is very clever, she failed to come first.

- **fill (ed)** يملأ

Ex. Could you fill the bottle with water, please?

3) Sequence expressions

نستخدم الكلمات الآتية لنعبر عن التتابع والتسلسل في سرد قصة أو أحداث

When	عندما	Later	لاحقا
Then	ثم	Now	الآن
After that	بعد ذلك		

4) like - would ('d) like

- **like + n / V-ing/ to + inf.** يحب

Ex. I like sports.

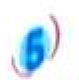
Ex. I like doing sports.

Ex. I like to do sports.

- **would ('d) like + (to + inf. /n) = want + (to + inf. /n)** يرغب في/يود

Ex. I'd like (want) to be an artist one day.

Ex. I'd like (want) tea, please.



job - work

• job (n) (a / an وظيفة/مهمة اسم يعد أو بجمع ويسبقه

Ex. Teaching deaf students is a hard job

• work (n) (a / an عمل اسم لا يعد أو لا يجمع ولا يسبقه

Ex. Tom pretended to enjoy his work



proud

• proud of + noun / V-ing. فخور بـ

Ex. I'm proud of my younger brother's achievement.

Ex. I'm proud of winning a prize.

• proud to + inf. فخور أن

Ex. I'm proud to work for that charity.



alone - lonely

• alone بمفرده

Ex. Have you done the housework alone Nada?

• lonely شاعر بالوحدة

Ex. Because I'm new in the school, I feel lonely

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: How .... does Nihal speak?
   B: She is very slow.
   a) easy b) long c) fast d) much
2. How did you .... when you listened to my story?
   a) feel b) fail c) filled d) fall
3. I .... to be a dentist one day.
   a) would b) will like c) would likes d) would like
4. After I finish study, I hope I'll find a good ....
   a) work b) would liked c) job d) prison
5. We are all proud .... our Egyptian Olympic Handball team.
   a) of b) about c) to d) for
6. Now I'm good at driving; I can drive ....
   a) once b) lonely c) only d) alone



Tapescript نصوص الاستماع SB Page (41)



Nihal : Today I am going to tell you about a bad thing that happened to me three months ago. I have done gymnastics[1] for about ten years. I train on Wednesdays and Saturdays every week. A few months ago, my coach[2] asked if I wanted to enter[3] my first competition. I was really excited[4] and I practised[5] every day for a month. On the Thursday before the competition, I was practising at home when I fell. My leg really hurt so my mum took me to the hospital. The doctor said I had a broken leg! I was so sad and I cried[6] and cried. I couldn't enter the competition.

I haven't been able to do gymnastics since then but I hope I can do it again soon. I really miss gymnastics. Next year I will try to enter the competition again!

Arabic Meaning

١- رياضة الجمباز
٢- مدرب
٣- يدخل (مسابقة)
٤- متحمس
٥- يتدرب
٦- يبكي

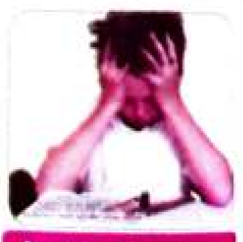


WB Page (100)

Tarek : My name's Tarek. I was born in 2006. I'm the oldest child in my family. My sister Dina was born in 2008 and my brother Ali was born in 2011. So, what exciting things have I done in my life? I've been to Jordan! My family went on holiday there when I was ten, so in 2016. I love handball and started playing it when I was 12. I play for a team and we've won a competition! We won it in 2020. That was amazing. What amazing things have you done?



Reading موضوعات القراءة SB P. (42)



I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my life. When[1] I was little, I always loved to draw[2] and paint[3] but I found reading and writing very difficult. At school, I didn't always understand[4] the lessons and it was really hard[5]. I thought I wasn't very clever.

Then my parents and the school decided to take me for some tests. They discovered[6] that I had dyslexia[7]*. This means it is difficult for my brain[8] to read and spell[9]. After that[10], I got more help at school and I started to understand more.

Arabic Meaning

١- عندما
٢- يرسم بالرصاص
٣- يرسم بالألوان
٤- يفهم
٥- صعب
٦- يكتشف
٧- عسر القراءة
٨- المخ
٩- يتهجى
١٠- بعد ذلك

When I took my exams, I got really good results[11]! I was surprised[12] and happy. Later[13], I got a prize for my art[14] and then I decided I would like to be an artist[15] one day. Now, I volunteer[16]* at a charity[17] for other children with dyslexia and teach them about art.

١١- نتائج
١٢- مندهش
١٣- لاحقاً
١٤- الرسم
١٥- فنان/رسام
١٦- يتطوع
١٧- جمعية خيرية

Say it correctly

* dyslexia ينطق المقطع الملون فى هذه الكلمة مثل نطق المقطع dis
* volunteer ينطق حرف o فى هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق فى كلمة got

SB Page (43)

Different families have lived in our house for over 200 years. I have lived here with my family since 2016. Before that, we lived in Cairo. My parents have changed some of the house when we moved here. For example, my mum wanted a new bathroom! My grandmother has lived with us for four years. It is a happy, family home.

WB Page (99)



Karim has enjoyed windsurfing[1] for about two years. He usually goes with his older brother. A few months ago, he decided to windsurf alone. He did not tell his brother this. It was windy[2], but that is good if you want to windsurf.

In the afternoon, the wind suddenly[3] became very strong. The wind took Karim far from[4] the beach. He was very scared[5].

Some people in a boat came to help Karim. After that, they took him back[6] to the beach. Karim has not windsurfed alone since that time. Now he always windsurfs with an older person. He has learned an important lesson!

Arabic Meaning

١- التزلج على الماء بواسطة الرياح
٢- شديد الرياح
٣- فجأة
٤- بعيداً عن
٥- خائف/مرعوب
٦- أعادوه

WB Page (100)

Events in Judy's life

I was born in Manchester in England. When I was a baby, my parents moved to Egypt. Before I started school, I learned to speak Arabic. When I started preparatory school, nobody knew that I was English! After my thirteenth birthday, I went to England and visited my cousins who still live there. Last year, they came to visit me in Egypt. They love it here!

Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sally hurt her leg while she was doing ....
   a gymnastics b physics c mathematics d cakes
2. Scientists often .... new and exciting things about space. WB
   a volunteer b discover c paint d windsurf
3. This boy needs to read and write more because he suffers from ....
   a fever b flu c dyslexia d headache
4. My grandfather has .... many things in his life. I am very proud of him. WB
   a pretended b spelled c robbed d achieved

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. My brother has a **fever**. He has problems with reading. (.........)
2. I do **mathematics** every week. I want to have a strong body. (.........)
3. There is a lot of wind today. You can enjoy **serving**. (.........)
4. My father has **received** many goals in his life. I'm proud of him. (.........)
5. I took a math exam. It's a good **reason**. (.........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's windy today; we can ....
   a windsurf b spell c serve d save
2. I'll do my best to .... my goals in life.
   a volunteer b achieve c train d invent
3. Tamer is standing in the garden ....
   a lonely b only c alone d one
4. The bomb has made a .... hole in the ground.
   a noisy b windy c scared d huge
5. What sport are you .... these days, Noha?
   a doing b making c getting d painting
6. A: How .... do you speak English, Huda?
   B: I'm very slow in speaking English.
   a long b much c fast d often

7. We have just had the .... of our tests, and we all did well! **WB**
   a) troubles b) timelines c) events d) results
8. Ghada has got good exam results and she .... happy.
   a) feels b) fills c) falls d) fails
9. .... means that someone finds it difficult to read or write.
   a) Charity b) Dyslexia c) Rhyme d) Result
10. Hatem .... to help the elderly in the nearby charity home. **WB**
   a) volunteered b) explained c) discovered d) invented

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. My sister has difficulty in reading. We **invented** that she has dyslexia. (........................)
2. To be fit, you should **make** a sport. (........................)
3. I **discovered** to help students who have dyslexia. (........................)

Language Functions

1 Telling a story about something that happened in your life

سرد قصة عن شيء حدث لك في حياتك

عندما تسرد قصة ، حاول تنظيم أفكارك قبل أن تتحدث. فكر في أن تجعل قصتك أكثر تشويقاً من خلال إضافة الظروف و الصفات الموضحة بالأمثلة:

Ex. Suddenly, there was a huge, noisy storm!
Ex. Today I'm going to tell you about a good thing that happened to me.

- لابد أن تجيب عن الأسئلة الآتية عند سرد قصة:

- When? Where?
- What happened?
- How did you feel?

2 Important things you have achieved in your life

أشياء مهمة حققتها في حياتك

- يمكن استخدام زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن أشياء مهمة حققتها في حياتك ونكمل بالإجابة في زمن الماضي البسيط

Ex. A: I have learnt to swim.
B: When did you do that?
A: I did that last month.

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy is asking Dina about a story she has just read.

Ramy : What have you read recently, Dina?
Dina : ❶ .... called Oliver Twist.
Ramy : ❷ .... ?
Dina : Yes, he is the main character in this story.
Ramy : ❸ .... ?
Dina : It tells about a poor boy who was in trouble.
Ramy : How did you feel about that story?
Dina : ❹ ....
Ramy : Could you lend me this story?
Dina : ❺ ....

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You tell your brother what has happened to you on your way from school.

....

2. You tell your friend about an important thing you have achieved in your life.

....

3. Your friend asks you where you have learnt karate.

....

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. How long ago .... Omar buy his car?
   a has b had c does d did
2. I've studied English for years. This means ....
   a I no longer study English b I never studied English
   c I study English now d I don't study English anymore
3. I .... tennis for a really long time. Now I love it!
   a didn't like b haven't liked c hadn't liked d won't like

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Judy travelled to Aswan a year ago. She's still there. (has gone)

....

2. This is the first time I have ever seen a lion. (before)

....

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina has just bought a present for Munir's birthday.

Munir : Where have you been, Dina?

Dina : I have been to the shops.

Munir : ❶ .... ?

Dina : To buy something.

Munir : ❷ .... ?

Dina : I have bought a present for you. Happy birthday.

Munir : Thanks. ❸ ....

Dina : ❹ .... Here you are.

2 Read and match:

A	B
1. Salma has played	a. drunk coffee.
2. I caught a big fish	b. orphanage.
3. She's deaf. She's learning	c. sign language.
4. She was brought up in an	d. a musical instrument lately.
5. Zina has never	e. last week.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- .... 5- ....

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

امثلة عنه في آخر الكتاب

"Your favourite hobby"

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What's your favourite hobby?**
- **Who helps you to practise it?**
- **Where do you practise it?**
- **How is your hobby useful?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- .... **is my favourite hobby.**
- **I go to** .... **to practise it.**
- .... **helps me there.**
- **My hobby is very interesting because** ....

General Exercises on Unit 4

A Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Zaher is asking Nour about his family.

Zaher : Which one of your family has been to another country?

Nour : ❶ ....

Zaher : Which country has your uncle been to?

Nour : ❷ .... Germany

Zaher : ❸ ....?

Nour : To have a university degree.

Zaher : ❹ ....?

Nour : No, I haven't travelled abroad but I want to visit England one day.

Zaher : I hope you will achieve your goals.

Nour : ❺ ....?

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Tell your friend about an experience that happened to you yesterday.

....

2. Your cousin asks you how long you've had a laptop.

....

3. Ask a friend if he / she has ever moved to another house.

....

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Karim!

I am **planning** a camping trip by the lake with my cousins. I know how much you like camping and it's been a while since I last saw you. Would you like to come? We are going to leave in Saturday morning and we have enough tents, so you don't have to bring your own. However, you should bring a sleeping bag and anything else you think you might need. My cousins Amr and Fady are going to bring a few sandwiches, but **there** is also a supermarket close to the campsite, so we can go

there if we need more food. Oh, we will return in Sunday evening at about eight
Anyway, let me know if you can make it.
Take care,

Ali

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the letter talking about?

....

2. How long will the trip last?

....

3. What should Karim bring?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word **"there"** refers to ....
   - a the lake
   - b the camp
   - c the supermarket
   - d the tent
5. Ali seems to be a / an .... person.
   - a shy
   - b cruel
   - c stressful
   - d active
6. The underlined word **"planning"** means ....
   - a staying
   - b understanding
   - c organizing
   - d selling

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They cross the river by a .... to reach their village.
   - a canoe
   - b bike
   - c foot
   - d bus
2. It is Lara's birthday today and she .... a lot of cake! SB
   - a eat
   - b have eaten
   - c are eating
   - d has eaten
3. I don't like .... horses. I think it's dangerous.
   - a driving
   - b riding
   - c running
   - d playing
4. Some tourists had a trip full of .... in Sinai desert yesterday.
   - a adventure
   - b snorkelling
   - c diving
   - d windsurfing
5. The musicians used modern musical .... in the concert.
   - a devices
   - b tools
   - c experiences
   - d instruments
6. Have you .... London on business? WB
   - a gone
   - b been to
   - c been
   - d fly to

7. Have you ever .... a kite?
   a) made b) make c) making d) to make
8. .... he ever forgotten your birthday party?
   a) Have b) Did c) Does d) Has
9. Mr Sameh cares .... all his students in class.
   a) over b) about c) off d) at
10. We've been best friends .... we were children.
   a) since b) for c) just d) ago

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I have never travelled by plane. I don't like travelling by air. WB (ever)
2. Dina has got married since 2015. (for)
3. They haven't arrived on time? WB (Have)

D Writing

6 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. **Sand surfing** is an exciting water sport. ( )
2. She is a good player. She **rains** four hours a day. ( )
3. His head hurts him. He has a **backache**. ( )
4. Have you ever **be** to Alexandria? ( )

7 Write an email of about 110 words: (أجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

to your friend Ali telling him about something you have achieved.

-Your name is Osama and your email address is osamamail@yahoo.com

-Your friend's email address is alipost@yahoo.com

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Why do you write this email?
- What happened to you when you were a baby?
- What have you learned?
- What happened later?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I write my email to
- When I was a baby,
- I have learned
- After that,



Young role models

Objectives

Reading:

A text about a business person and a space engineer; a biography of a friend; an article about a sports tournament; a biography of a tennis player

Writing:

A description of someone's job; a paragraph about a tournament or a competition; a biography of a role model

Listening:

A conversation about a role model; an interview with an inventor; a conversation sharing good news

Speaking:

Discussing jobs; talking about sports tournaments; responding to good news

Language:

The present perfect with yet and already

Life Skills: Respect for diversity



Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 44-47 WB pages 101-102

Key Vocabulary

role model	قدوة (نموذج يحتذى به)	campaigner	مناضل
championship	بطولة	volunteer	متطوع
equipment	معدات (اسم لا يُعد)	achievement	إنجاز
competition	مسابقة - منافسة	speech	خطاب / تحدث
hyperloop	كبسولات ركاب فائقة السرعة	goal	هدف
blind	كفيف (أعمى)	achieve (d)	يحقق / ينجز
tournament	دورة مباريات	challenge (d) (n)	يتحدى - تحدي
space engineering	هندسة الفضاء	enter (ed)	يدخل (مسابقة)
space technology	تكنولوجيا الفضاء	award (n) (ed)	جائزة (رسمية) - يمنح جائزة

Jobs

business person	رجل أعمال	artist	فنان - رسام
sports champion	بطل رياضي	space scientist	عالم فضاء
astronaut	رائد فضاء	space engineer	مهندس فضاء
mathematician	متخصص في الرياضيات	computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
musician	موسيقي	engineer	مهندس مدني
scientist	عالم	manager	مدير

Vocabulary

men's championship	بطولة للرجال	crossword	الكلمات المتقاطعة
meeting	اجتماع - لقاء	discussion	مناقشة
bridge	جسر (كوبري)	plastic	بلاستيك - بلاستيكي
company	شركة	The Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
article	مقال	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
Nigeria	دولة نيجيريا	Cambridge University	جامعة كامبريدج
Brazil	دولة البرازيل	disabled people	ذوي الإعاقة
science project	مشروع علمي	education	تعليم
space science	علوم الفضاء	receive (d)	يستلم
engineering student	طالب هندسة	design (n) (ed)	تصميم - يصمم شيء
emergency	طوارئ	pass (ed)	يجتاز



Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic	Meaning
campaigner	مناضل	a person whose job is to try and change the way people do things in society[1]
mathematician	متخصص في الرياضيات	someone who studies, works with or teaches maths
role model	قدوة (نموذج يحتذى به)	someone that you want to copy because you respect[2] them
sports champion	بطل رياضي	a person who wins a sports competition
championship	بطولة	a competition to find the best team or player in a sport
scientist	عالم	someone who works with science
artist	فنان - رسام	someone who is good at art
musician	موسيقي	someone who is good at music
enter	يدخل (مسابقة)	decide to take part[3] in something such as a competition
goal	هدف	something that you hope to do in the future
speech	خطاب - حديث	a talk that someone gives to a group of people
tournament	دورة مباريات	competition in which many players or teams take part
astronaut	رائد فضاء	someone who travels and works in a spacecraft[4]
award	جائزة	a prize for an event[5] or competition
achieve	ينجز - يحقق	succeed in doing something good or that you want to do
achievement	إنجاز	something important that you have done

Arabic Meaning

Expressions  Prepositions

Expression	Arabic
give a speech	يلقي خطاب/حديث
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
get paid for	يتلقى أجر عن
do a job	يقوم بوظيفة/بمهمة
achieve a goal	يحقق هدف
finish university	ينهي الدراسة الجامعية
take part	يشارك
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
have a meeting	لديه اجتماع/لقاء
pass an exam	يجتاز امتحان
enter a competition	يدخل مسابقة
win a competition / an award	يفوز بمسابقة/بجائزة
join a team	ينضم لفريق
start a company	يبدأ تأسيس شركة
decide to	يقرر أن
all around the world	حول العالم
come from	يأتي من (بلده)
bad for	سيء لـ
believe in	يؤمن بـ
travel above the ground	يسافر فوق سطح الأرض

Word Differences

role	دور	rule	قاعدة
model	نموذج	medal	ميدالية
champion	بطل رياضى	hero	بطل فى (الحياة/رواية)
speech	خطاب/حديث	speak	يتحدث
mathematician	متخصص فى الرياضيات	sportsman	شخص رياضى
hard	صعب/شاق	hardly	بالكاد / بصعوبة
own	ملك/خاصته	owe	يدين
award	جائزة (رسمية)	reward	مكافأة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
go	يذهب	went	gone
give	يعطى	gave	given
get	يحصل على	got	got
pay	يدفع (مال/أجر)	paid	paid

Language Notes

1) Adding (-ian) or (-ist) to make the names of jobs

غالباً نضيف اللاحقتان -ian / -ist لتكوين أسماء الوظائف، وهذه أمثلة للتوضيح::

librarian	أمين مكتبة	artist	فنان/رسام
musician	موسيقي	florist	بائع زهور
historian	مؤرخ	dentist	طبيب أسنان
politician	سياسى	chemist	كيميائى
electrician	كهربائى	scientist	عالم
mathematician	متخصص فى الرياضيات	journalist	صحفى

Ex. Mozart was a talented musician.

Ex. The artist drew the scene from memory.

2) win - earn

• **win (won / won)** يفوز بـ أميدالية / جائزة / مسابقة ... إلخ)

Ex. I won the school reading competition last year.

• **earn (ed) (money - a living / his living)** يكسب (مال - قوت يومه)

Ex. Mr Ahmed earns a lot of money a year.

Ex. My father works hard to earn his living.

3) work on - work with - work for - work as

• **work on (a project)** يعمل على تطوير (مشروع مثلاً)

Ex. I'm working on a school project about pollution.

• **work with** يعمل مع

Ex. Every football team has had a doctor to work with them.

Ex. A mathematician is someone who works with maths.

• **work for (a company / someone)** يعمل لدى / لصالح (شركة أو شخص)

Ex. I started working for a big company three years ago.

• **work as (job)** يعمل كـ (وظيفة)

Ex. Noha has worked as a volunteer since she left school.

4) information - equipment

- هذه الكلمات تعامل معاملة المفرد ولا نضع أمامها أدوات نكرة a / an ويأتي بعدها فعل لفاعل مفرد (v+s / is / was / does / has).

Ex. The information about this project is in today's papers.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Have you ever .... a competition?
   a earned b won c given d stayed
2. A scientist is someone who works .... science.
   a for b as c on d with
3. My uncle Munir works .... a space engineer.
   a as b on c for d in
4. This equipment .... suitable for diving.
   a is b were c are d have



SB P. (45)

My cousin, Gamal, is a business person[1]. When he finished university, he got a job with a big company[2] in Cairo. He's worked there for three years now.

I think he's got a very important job. He's the manager[3] of a team[4] of people and they have meetings[5] every day. He works very hard. Sometimes, he has to meet people from companies in other countries. He has travelled to lots of interesting places. Last year, he went to Nigeria and Brazil.



١- رجل أعمال
٢- شركة
٣- مدير
٤- فريق
٥- اجتماعات



*mathematician (sh) ينطق حرفى [ci] فى هذه الكلمة مثل نطق الصوت ش

SB Page (46)

Samar Abdelfattah has always been interested in space. As a young child, she wanted to be an astronaut[1]. After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study space engineering[2].

While Samar was at university, a space technology[3] company had a competition[4]. Students had to design*[5] a hyperloop*[6] —a new, very fast form of transport[7] that travels above the ground. Samar decided to enter the competition[8] and asked other engineering students[9] from the university to join her team.

Arabic Meaning

١- رائد فضاء
٢- هندسة الفضاء
٣- تكنولوجيا الفضاء
٤- مسابقة
٥- يصمم شيء
٦- كبسولة ركاب فائقة السرعة
٧- مواصلات
٨- يدخل المسابقة
٩- طلاب هندسة

Teams of students from universities all around the world entered, but Samar's team was the only one from Africa or the Middle East[10]. They worked hard on their design and they won the competition. Samar travelled to the USA to receive the award[11].

Three years later, Samar started her own[12] company. Now she is a space engineer[13] and a business person. She also gives speeches[14] to other young engineers to help them achieve[15] their goals.

١٠- الشرق الأوسط
١١- جائزة
١٢- خاصتها
١٣- مهندس فضاء
١٤- خطاب/حديث
١٥- يحقق/ينجز



*design — لا ينطق حرف (g) فى هذه الكلمة

* hyperloop — ينطق حرفى (hy) فى هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة (high)



Binita who is from a village in India, was five years old when she became blind[1]. This was a big challenge[2] for her. She went to a school for blind children until she was eleven, when she joined a different school with children who weren't blind.

At school, Binita found that the children quickly learnt about her problems. They now know that just because she is blind does not mean she cannot do 99% of the things that they can do! Now she is a campaigner*[3] for other people who are disabled[4].

Her next challenge is to help everyone understand that being disabled does not mean you cannot achieve your goals.

Arabic Meaning

١- كفيف (أعمى)
٢- تحدى
٣- مناضلة
٤- ذو إعاقة



*campaigner — لا ينطق حرف (g) فى هذه الكلمة



SB Page (47)

Seleem : Hi, Mazin! What are you reading?

Mazin : It's an article about Magdy Abdel Sayed. He's a campaigner for people who are disabled.

Seleem : So, is he disabled?

Mazin : Yes, he's been disabled all his life. He's done lots of amazing things, but he has had lots of challenges.

Seleem : What was his life like as a child?

Mazin : Well, he couldn't move without help until he was five years old.

Seleem : Did he go to school?

Mazin : Yes, but it wasn't easy. Some schools couldn't have Magdy as a student because they didn't have the right equipment for disabled people.

Seleem : So what happened?

Mazin : Magdy really wanted to go to school and his parents wanted him to have a good education(1). They found a school for him and he was an excellent(2) student.

Seleem : Were there a lot of challenges for Magdy at school?

Mazin : Yes, there were, but he never stopped trying when things were difficult. Before he left school, he won an award from Cambridge University for his achievements.

Seleem : That's amazing! What did he do when he finished school? Did he get a job or go to university?

Mazin : Well, after Magdy won the award, a lot of companies wanted to give him a job, but he decided to go to university.

Seleem : Of course, because education was very important to him.

Mazin : Yes, but it wasn't the only important thing. Magdy has always believed in(3) helping other people. At university, he worked as a volunteer for different charities(4).

Seleem : And does he still help people now?

Mazin : Yes, he does. He works with a charity that helps disabled people find jobs. He also gives speeches about how everyone can achieve their goals.

Arabic Meaning

١. تعليم
٢- ممتاز
٣- يؤمن بـ
٤- جمعية خيرية

Videoscript

SB Page (47)

Have you ever looked at the sky at night? You have probably seen the moon, planets[1] and stars in space.

People have already visited space many times. A Russian astronaut, Yuri Gagarin, went in 1961. And in 1969, an American astronaut called Neil. Armstrong was the first man on the moon.

Today, there are astronauts on a satellite[2] called the International Space Station[3]. This flies around our planet every 90 minutes. The astronauts on the space station do scientific[4] experiments to study space. They usually stay on the space station for about six months. And they even do exercises for two hours every day to keep fit[5].

Space has interested[6] Egyptians for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians were the first civilization[7] to study the stars and the planets, and they made some important discoveries[7]. They first discovered the equinox[9]. This happens in March and September every year and it is when the position[10] of the sun in the sky means that the day and the night are the same length.

We are still making important discoveries today. At the Egyptian Space Agency[11] in Cairo, engineers from the agency and students from Cairo University have already built satellites. They now want to send an Egyptian astronaut to explore[12] space. Nobody from Egypt has visited space yet, but they will in the future.

Arabic Meaning

١- الكواكب
٢- قمر صناعى
٣- محطة فضائية
٤- علمى
٥- لائق بدنيا
٦- أثار اهتمام
٧- حضارة
٨- اكتشافات
٩- الاعتدال الشمسى
١٠- وضع / مكان
١١- وكالة الفضاء المصرية
١٢- يستكشف

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Gamal is the .... of the company. SB
   a business b champion c musician d manager
2. A/An .... is a new kind of fast space vehicle.
   a hyperloop b bike c motorbike d bus
3. Samar wanted to be a / an .... when she was young. She wanted to explore the space. SB
   a mathematician b astronaut c artist d musician
4. Nahla's .... is to pass all her exams with top marks! WB
   a challenge b change c charge d check
5. A computer .... is a person who can deal with computers.
   a manager b doctor c programmer d vet
6. Dr Nawal is a famous scientist and she always gives ....
   a models b speeches c phrases d sentences

7. He wants to be a / an .... and gets lots of medals in sports competitions.
   a) volunteer   b) sports champion   c) teacher   d) astronaut

8. Ahmed loves crosswords and has decided to .... a crossword competition. WB
   a) enter   b) exit   c) challenge   d) lose

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Ronaldo is a **rule** model for millions of the young. (..................)
2. We need a computer **programme** to fix our computer. (..................)
3. A **deaf** is a person who cannot see. (..................)
4. Climbing a mountain is a great **charge**. (..................)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She tried very hard and won the ....
   a) goal   b) competition   c) role   d) space
2. He worked so hard to .... his goals in life.
   a) make   b) go   c) do   d) achieve
3. Samar studied space .... at Cairo University. SB
   a) engineering   b) emergency   c) crossword   d) education
4. This is the fourth .... of the Olympic games.
   a) space   b) tournament   c) tour   d) role
5. Schools should have .... for disabled people. WB
   a) equipment   b) crosswords   c) engineers   d) speeches
6. Omar writes to pen friends from all .... the world.
   a) to   b) round   c) circle   d) around
7. Samar travelled to the USA to receive her .... SB
   a) award   b) review   c) word   d) champion
8. Captain Nagy is a good .... model for young players.
   a) rule   b) roll   c) role   d) rail
9. A/An .... is a person who does work without being paid.
   a) farmer   b) actor   c) player   d) volunteer
10. Gamal started working .... the company three years ago. SB
    a) on   b) about   c) for   d) to
11. A space .... company had a competition and Samar entered it. SB
    a) technology   b) championship   c) tournament   d) award
12. A / An .... is a person who is very good at maths and numbers.
    a) astronaut   b) mathematician   c) programmer   d) musician

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Messi and Nymar are sports **championships**. (........)
2. **An engineer** is the one who plays music. (........)
3. The manager of the factory **takes** a speech every meeting. (........)
4. Many people want to win a **completion**. (........)
5. The **science** does a lot of experiments in the lab. (........)



The present perfect and the past simple

• إرجع إلى شرح الزمنين فى الوحدة السابقة.

الفرق بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط

The present perfect tense	The past simple tense
• نستخدمه للتحدث عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى ولازال مستمر فى الحاضر • We have lived in Giza for eight years. (We still live there.)	• نستخدمه للتحدث عن حدث وقع فى الماضى وانتهى • We lived in Giza from 2000 to 2008. (We no longer live there.)
• نستخدمه للتحدث عما انجزه شخص وقابل للزيادة والتكرار (عندما يكون الشخص لازال على قيد الحياه) • Salah has scored many goals.	• نستخدمه للتحدث عما انجزه شخص فى الماضى ولكنه غير قابل للزياده والتكرار (الوفاه الشخص مثلاً) • Naguib Mahfouz wrote many novels.
• نستخدمه للتعبير عن حدث وقع فى الماضى ولكننا لا نعرف متى حدث بالضبط • Ali has bought a new car. (We don't know when.)	• نستخدمه عندما نعرف متى وقع الحدث بالضبط فى الماضى • Ali bought a new car last week. (We know this is a fact.)
• نستخدمه للتعبير عن حدث وقع فى الماضى وله نتيجه فى الحاضر • I have lost the car key. I can't start it now.	• نستخدمه للتعبير عن حدث وقع فى الماضى وليس له نتيجه فى الحاضر ولا مرتبط به • I lost the car key yesterday.

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Samar .... many goals.
   - a just has achieved
   - b has achieved just
   - c has just achieved
   - d just achieve
2. Sami .... his exams last week. SB
   - a passes
   - b passed
   - c pass
   - d has passed
3. I .... lots of interesting cities in my country. SB
   - a have visited
   - b visiting
   - c visits
   - d has visited
4. Noha .... as a volunteer since she left school. SB
   - a has worked
   - b worked
   - c will work
   - d works
5. My mum .... to be a sports champion when she was young. SB
   - a has wanted
   - b wants
   - c wanted
   - d want

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. How long have you been to Scotland? (When)

   ....

2. Gehad entered a competition a year ago. (since)

   ....

3. Last year, I travelled to meetings around the world. WB (ago)

   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined words(s):

1. Last year, I **have travelled** to France. (..................)
2. We **has finished** our homework. (..................)
3. My sister has **reading** a lot of interesting stories. (..................)
4. My mum **has played** tennis when she was young. (..................)
5. Which team did your grandfather support in the **future**? (..................)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We .... our science project last week. SB
   a) have finished b) are finishing c) will finish d) finished
2. Dina .... to Cairo University two years ago.
   a) has gone b) will go c) went d) goes
3. Since I started my job, I .... with hundreds of computers! WB
   a) work b) has worked c) worked d) have worked
4. Last week, I .... to take some disabled children to a park. WB
   a) helped b) has helped c) will help d) have helped
5. My brother .... lots of interesting books about space science. SB
   a) have read b) reading c) has read d) are read
6. This year, we .... shops to use less plastic, because it is bad for the environment. WB
   a) ask b) have asked c) has asked d) to ask

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Dad has just come home. (ago)

   ....

2. Amira has started a new company since 2015. (for)

   ....

3. Noha has worked as a space engineer for a year. (How long)

   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined words(s):

1. Egypt had less people 50 years **age**. (............)
2. My dad **has been** to the USA. He is there now. (............)
3. **A:** What did he have? **B:** He **has** a car. (............)
4. **Has** you played squash before? (............)
5. They **have study** maths to be mathematicians. (............)

4 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on: SB

إجابته في آخر الكتاب

"An interesting job"

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- What jobs do you know?
- What do you think the most interesting job?
- Whose job do you like writing about?
- What's his / her job? What does he / she do?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- The most interesting job for me is ....
- I want to write about ....
- He / She works as ....
- He / She enjoys ....

Language Functions

Asking and answering questions about challenges

السؤال والاجابة عن التحديات

- نسأل ونجيب بمعلومات عن ما فعله شخص ما من تحديات لتحقيق هدفه كالآتي:



A	B
- Which university did he / she go to?	- He / She went to.........University.
- What competition did he / she enter?	- He / She entered a ...... competition.
- Who were in his / her team?	- ....was / were in his / her team.
- Where did other teams come from?	- They came from different countries.
- What has he / she achieved?	- He / She achieved................

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Youssef and Shady are talking about Dr. Ahmed Zewail.

Youssef : Hi, Shady. What are you reading about?

Shady : ❶ ....

Youssef : ❷ ....?

Shady : He went to Alexandria University.

Youssef : ❸ ....?

Shady : He was the first Egyptian to receive the Noble Prize in chemistry.

Youssef : That's a great achievement! ❹ ....

Shady : You must work hard to be like him.

Youssef : ❺ ....

Shady : Me too, I'll do my best.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask a space scientist what university he / she went to.

....

2. Your friend asks you about what you have achieved.

....

3. A friend asks you about a competition you have entered.

....

4. You ask a friend what challenge he / she has had in his / her life.

....



3 & 4

SB pages 48-59 WB pages 104-105

Key Vocabulary

biography	سيرة ذاتية	pandemic	جائحة
creative	مبدع	bubble	فقاعة - مكان معزول
app (application)	تطبيق	organiser	منظم
quarter finals	ربع النهائيات	spectators	المشاهدون/الجمهور
finals	النهائيات	create (d)	يبدع/ينشئ/يخلق
stadium	استاد	score (d)	يسجل هدف
medical team	فريق طبي	test (ed)	يختبر - يفحص
coronavirus	فيروس كورونا	volunteer (ed) (n)	يتطوع - متطوع

Words with similar meanings

contest	منافسة/مسابقة/ تنافس	competition	مسابقة/منافسة
competitor	منافس	player	لاعب
incredible	لا يصدق/مذهل	fantastic	رائع
staff	طاقم العمل	workers	العاملين
tournament	دورة رياضية	sports event	حدث رياضي

Words, meanings & opposites

word		meaning		opposite	
big	كبير	large	كبير	small	صغير
champion	بطل	winner	فائز	loser	خاسر
clean (ed)	ينظف	wash (ed)	يغسل	make dirty	يدنس/يجعله متسخًا
incredible	لا يصدق	really good	جيد حقًا	terrible	فظيع
nobody	لا أحد	no one	لا أحد	everyone	كل واحد/الجميع

Short form of words

application	= app	تطبيق (على الهاتف)
mathematics	= maths	الرياضيات
television	= TV	تلفاز (تليفزيون)
photograph	= photo	صورة فوتوغرافية
aeroplane	= plane	طائرة



Vocabulary

English	Arabic
poem	قصيدة شعر
concert	حفل موسيقى
nervous	عصبى/متوتر
dream	حلم
Maybe	ربما
company	صحبة/رفاق
handball	لعبة كرة اليد
newspaper	جريدة/صحيفة
possible	ممكن
impossible	مستحيل
the Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية (الألمبياد)
exciting	مثير
during	أثناء
The Ministry of Health	وزارة الصحة
The Ministry of Youth and Sports	وزارة الشباب والرياضة
safe	أمن
excellent	ممتاز
health centre	مركز صحى
cleaner	عامل نظافة
achievement	انجاز
tour	جولة سياحية
airport	مطار
African Cup of Nations	كأس الأمم الأفريقية
Ivory Coast	دولة ساحل العاج
Abidjan	أبيدجان (عاصمة ساحل العاج)
twice	مرتان
success	نجاح
medal	ميدالية
viewer	مشاهد
stay (ed)	يقيم - يبقى
reach (ed)	يصل إلى

Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic	Meaning
app (application)	تطبيق	software[1] you can use on your computer or phone
competition	مسابقة	an event in which people try to be the best at something
create	يبدع/ينشيء/يخلق	to make something new
creative	مبدع/خلاق	good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something
biography	سيرة ذاتية	a book or text about someone's life
bubble	فقاعة طبية - مكان معزول	a group of people who can meet during a health emergency[2]
coronavirus pandemic	جائحة كرونا	the cause of the health emergency which began in 2019, when many people became ill around the world
organiser	منظِم	someone who organises[3] or plans an event
spectator	مشاهد/متفرج	someone who watches a sport or an event

Arabic Meaning

١. برنامج حاسب
٢. طوارىء
٣- ينظم

Expressions  Prepositions

feel nervous	يشعر بتوتر	day and night	ليلاً ونهاراً
create an app	ينشيء تطبيق	volunteer to	يتطوع لـ
play in a concert	يعزف في حفل موسيقي	in the bubble	في الفقاعة الطبية
have a contest	لديه مسابقة	test....for	يفحص - فحص...من اجل
have lunch	يتناول الغداء	on TV	في التلفاز
have a tour	يذهب في جولة سياحية	on the Nile	في النيل
score a goal	يسجل هدف	by night	بحلول الليل
make.... safe	يجعل....آمناً	a short form of	صيغة مختصرة من
do homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي		

Word Differences

poem	قصيدة شعر	poetry	الشعر
spectator	متفرج (لحدث رياضي)	viewer	مشاهد للتلفاز
score	يسجل هدف	record	يسجل (معلومات/صوت/رقم قياسي)
tour	جولة سياحية	tower	برج

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
go	يذهب	went	gone
make	يجعل - يصنع	made	made

Language Notes

1) spectator - viewer - audience

- **spectator** المشاهد لمباراة في الاستاد أو عرض عسكري أو موكب

Ex. There weren't any spectators in the stadium because of coronavirus pandemic.

- **viewer** المشاهد: تستخدم لوصف من يشاهد برنامج بالتليفزيون

Ex. Many viewers watched the programme on TV.

- **audience** الحضور أو الجمهور المتابع (المسرحية بالمسرح - حفل موسيقي - فيلم داخل دار السينما)

- اسم مفرد يليه فعل مفرد أو جمع - أما إذا جاء بصيغة الجمع (audiences) فيليه فعل جمع:

Ex. The audience was/were silent during the play.

Ex. The audiences are waiting for the concert to start.

2) go (with sports)

- تستخدم **go** مع الأنشطة و الرياضيات التى تنتهى بـ **(-ing)**:

go travelling يسافر — go shopping يذهب للتسوق

go swimming يذهب للسباحة — go fishing يذهب للصيد

Ex. We can go travelling together, it will be fun.

3) reach - arrive

- **reach (ed)** يتوصل الى شيئ (قرار/اتفاق/حل وسط ...الخ)

Ex. The Egyptian team did an excellent job and reached the quarter finals.

- **reached (ed)** يصل إلى مكان (كبير أو صغير)

Ex. The train reached the final station on time.

- **arrive (d)** تستخدم بدون مفعول بمعنى (يصل)

Ex. Omar arrived late to school today.

- **arrive (d) in** يصل إلى مكان كبير (دولة/عاصمة/مدينة)

Ex. We arrived in Paris at 8 a.m.

- **arrive at** يصل الى مكان صغير (مطار/مستشفى/محطة القطار ...الخ)

Ex. They arrived at the airport late. The plane has left.

لاحظ أننا نقول : **arrive home - arrive here / there**

4) biography - autobiography

- **biography** سيرة ذاتية يكتبها شخص عن آخر

Ex. In this book, the writer writes a biography about Shakespeare.

- **autobiography** سيرة ذاتية يكتبها شخص عن نفسه

Ex. You can read the autobiography of Taha Hussein in his book Al Ayam.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. About 40,000 .... attended the match in Cairo Stadium.
   a spectators b tournaments c finals d organisers
2. When you visit Cairo, you can go .... at Khan El Khalili.
   a shops b to shop c to shopping d shopping
3. She's too short to .... the top shelf.
   a arrive b reach c reach to d arrive at
4. I'm reading a / an .... of Charles Dickens written by a French author.
   a autobiography b photography c biography d biology





My friend Aya has always loved writing stories and poems[1]. When she was six, she won a prize for a poem she wrote! She has already written a book of stories. Now, she's writing her second book, but she hasn't finished it yet. She really likes to be creative[2]. She has played the guitar for three years now. She's played in two concerts[3] already. She felt very nervous[4] but she was amazing[5]! Aya would like to volunteer[6] to teach writing and music to children one day[7]. Her other dream[8] is to create an app[9] to help children learn. She hasn't been to another country yet, but there are lots she wants to visit! Maybe[10] we can go travelling together.

Arabic Meaning

١- قصائد شعر
٢- مبدع
٣- حفل موسيقي
٤- متوتر
٥- مذهل
٦- يتطوع
٧- يوماً ما
٨- حلم
٩- تنشيء تطبيق
١٠- ربما

SB Page (50)



IN THE BUBBLE

Today, the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship[1] in Egypt finished. It has been the biggest handball tournament[2] ever. The Egyptian team did an excellent job[3] and reached the quarter* finals[4] (the last eight). There were over 600 competitors[5] from 32 countries. They have played over 100 games and scored[6] more than 5,500 goals! All of this was during the coronavirus pandemic[7]. Many people said it wasn't possible, but the contest[8] in Egypt has been fantastic[9]!

The medical team[10] have worked for months to make the tournament safe[11]. Firstly, there haven't been any spectators[12]. Also, the players and staff[13]* have had tests[14] for coronavirus every 48 hours. Players and people working at the tournament have used four hotels and stayed inside this "bubble"[15]. These hotels all have a health centre[16] and every team has had a doctor to work with them. Lots of cleaners[17] have worked day and night[18] to clean the stadiums[19] and the hotels and make them safe.

Arabic Meaning

١- بطولة العالم لكرة اليد للرجال
٢- دورة رياضية
٣- مهمة ممتازة
٤- ربع النهائيات
٥- متسابقون
٦- يسجل اهداف
٧- جائحة كرونا
٨- مسابقة
٩- رائعة
١٠- فريق طبي
١١- آمن
١٢- متفرجين / جمهور
١٣- طاقم العمل
١٤- يفحص
١٥- فقاعة طبية / مكان معزول
١٦- مركز صحي
١٧- عامل نظافة
١٨- ليلاً ونهاراً
١٩- استاد

The medical team were from the Ministry of Health[20] and the Ministry of Youth and Sports[21]. They have done such an incredible[22] job that the organisers[23] of the 2021 Olympics[24] in Japan have asked them for their advice. What an amazing achievement[25]!

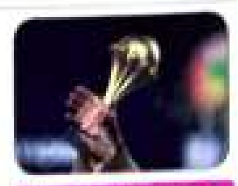
٢٠- وزارة الصحة
٢١- وزارة الشباب والرياضة
٢٢- لا يصدق
٢٣- منظم
٢٤- أولمبياد
٢٥- إنجاز

Say it correctly

*quarter	ينطق الجزء الملون (uar) مثل نطق (our) في كلمة four
*staff	ينطق حرف (a) هنا مثل نطقه في كلمة (part) أو نطقه في كلمة (cat)

WB Page (105)

Egypt has already won the Africa Cup of Nations[1] seven times. That is an incredible achievement! In 2023, the tournament will be in Ivory Coast[2], who have already been champions[3] twice before. The competitors will be from 23 other countries and the games will be in six different stadiums. The biggest stadium, in Abidjan, holds 60,000 spectators. The organisers are sure[4] that it will be a great success[5].



Arabic Meaning

١- كأس الأمم الأفريقية
٢- ساحل العاج
٣- أبطال
٤- متأكد
٥- نجاح



SB Page (49)

Interviewer : So Haytham, you are only 18 years old and you have already created[1] an app[2], is that right?

Haytham : Yes! I created an app last year.

Interviewer : What does your app do?

Haytham : It's an app to help people organise[3] their schoolwork and homework. I needed all my work and timetables to be in the same place so I made it to help me! Then my friends liked it too, so I decided to let other people use it, too!

Interviewer : That sounds great! When can we use it?

Haytham : People have used it in a few schools so you can use it now.

Interviewer : Have you created any other apps yet?

Haytham : No, I haven't yet, but I have lots of ideas[4]!

Interviewer : Have you got a job at a big technology company yet?

Haytham : No, not yet! I have already talked to some about my ideas but I haven't finished school yet and I want to go to university.

Arabic Meaning

١- يبتكر/ينشئ
٢- تطبيق
٣- ينظم
٤- أفكار

Exercises on Lessons



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Aya is a very .... person. SB
   a expensive b possible c final d creative
2. "App" is a short form of ".........." WB
   a apple b bubble c application d apply
3. ".........." means to make something new. WB
   a Create b Translate c Achieve d Score
4. ".........." is a similar word to "competition". SB
   a Staff b Contest c Champion d Spectator
5. Brazil will meet Argentina in the ....
   a finals b bubbles c concerts d tours
6. Aya wants to .... to work with children. SB
   a reach b score c volunteer d bear

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The tournament **organise** wants to attract the top players. (..........)
2. The **medicine** team takes care of the ill people during the pandemic. (..........)
3. He **scared** the winning goal in the last minute of the match. (..........)
4. Everyone should have a **taste** for coronavirus. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "Maths" is a short form of ".........." WB
   a mothers b machines c mathematics d mathematicians
2. ".........." is a similar word to "winners". SB
   a Champions b Competitors c Players d Staff
3. There were 32 teams in the .... SB
   a staff b app c biography d contest
4. The .... left nobody in the village; all people died.
   a contest b pandemic c tournament d final

5. Nobody could watch the handball matches at the .... SB

ⓐ bubbles ⓑ spectators ⓒ stadiums ⓓ apps

6. Some players .... nervous before important matches.

ⓐ feel ⓑ fall ⓒ fail ⓓ fill

7. The .... team tested the players for coronavirus every day. SB

ⓐ medical ⓑ football ⓒ final ⓓ research

8. All the .... left the stadium happily after their team won the match.

ⓐ applications ⓑ concerts ⓒ cleaners ⓓ spectators

9. The .... which Ahmed wrote about Dr Zewail won the first school prize.

ⓐ biography ⓑ autobiography ⓒ photography ⓓ photocopy

10. The .... of the Olympics in Japan have asked the medical team for advice. SB

ⓐ spectators ⓑ organisers ⓒ contests ⓓ bubbles

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. When a team reaches the **falls**, it's a great achievement. (..........)
2. It's expected that many **viewers** will attend the final match in the stadium. (..........)
3. My cousin has created **a cap** on the mobile phone to help the deaf. (..........)
4. The people who have got coronavirus must be put in the **trouble**. (..........)
5. This famous writer is writing a **geography** of a famous scientist. He is writing about his life and achievement. (..........)



The present perfect with "yet" and "already"

yet بعد/حتى الآن

• تستخدم "yet" مع زمن المضارع التام في آخر الجملة المنفية:

Ex. She hasn't been to another country yet.

• تستخدم في نهاية السؤال:

Ex. Has she learnt a musical instrument yet?

already مسبقاً/قبل الوقت المتوقع /بالفعل

• تستخدم مع الجملة المثبتة في آخر الجملة أو قبل الفعل الاساسي للجملة بمعنى مسبقًا / قبل الوقت المتوقع :

Ex. She's played in two concerts already.

Ex. She has already written a book of stories.

لاحظ الآتي

١- يمكن أن نستخدم yet في آخر الجملة الاستفهامية للتعبير عن الضجر من التأخير في تنفيذ شيء ما:

Ex. Haven't you finished the cooking yet? I'm very hungry.

٢- يمكن أن تكتفي بالاجابة عن سؤال بـ yet في النفي بـ (No, not yet.) :

Ex. A: Have you learnt driving yet?

B: No, not yet.

٣- يمكن استخدام already في الجملة الاستفهامية لتعبر عن دهشة المتكلم من سرعة تمام الحدث على غير المتوقع :

Ex. Have you finished the test already? It's too early.

٤- السؤال بـ already غالبًا يعبر عن أن الحدث قد تم:

- قارن الآتي:

Ex. Have you met Dr. Ahmed yet?

- هنا المعنى يفيد أنني لا أعرف إذا كنت قد قابلته ام لا.

Ex. Have you already met Dr. Ahmed?

- هنا المعنى يفيد أننى أعتقد أنك ربما قابلته:

٥- يمكن أن نجيب عن سؤال بـ yet باستخدام already في الاثبات و never في النفي :

Ex. Has Jana been to the zoo yet?

Yes, she has already been to the zoo.

No, she has never been to the zoo.

- وكذلك السؤال بـ ever :

Ex. Have you ever eaten sushi?

Yes, I have already eaten sushi.

No, I have never eaten sushi.

Check ✓

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have .... had lunch.
   a) yet b) ever c) since d) already
2. Mona hasn't washed up the dishes ....
   a) already b) yet c) just d) since
3. Ahmed has .... travelled to London.
   a) already b) since c) for d) yet
4. You're still ill. Have you been seen by a doctor .... ?
   a) ago b) yet c) just d) ever

Drills

Rewrite جزء تدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

- يعتمد هذا السؤال على استخدام صيغ مماثلة للسؤال باستخدام كلمة/كلمات معطاة للطالب

1) Imod hasn't booked the cinema tickets yet. (Has)

- يريد منا أن تكون سؤال بـ هل ولابد أن نستخدم (yet) فى آخر السؤال أيضا.

- Has Imod booked the cinema tickets yet?

2) Have the engineers built the building yet? (No)

- يريد منا أن نجيب عن السؤال بالنفى ولابد من استخدام (yet) مع النفى فى آخر الجملة:

- No, the engineers haven't built the building yet.

3) I didn't expect you to do the homework so fast. (already)

- يمكن أن نستخدم صيغة الاستفهام فنقول:

- Have you done your homework already?

- هنا (already) فى آخر السؤال تعبر عن الدهشة من سرعة حدوث الفعل.
- أو نستخدم صيغة الإثبات فنقول:

- Wow! You've already done your homework.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up **Exercises**

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB

1. I've .... seen that film.
   a) soon b) ever c) yet d) already
2. .... you been to Paris yet?
   a) Has b) Have c) Does d) Is

3. I haven't finished my homework .... SB
a yet b since c never d ever

4. We've .... eaten our lunch. SB
a ever b already c yet d since

5. He's already .... three languages. SB
a learns b to learning c learnt d learn

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I didn't do the shopping. (yet)

....

2. We did our homework. (already)

....

3. Did you go to the Pyramids? SB (yet)

....

4. Has Mona bought her wedding dress yet? (No)

....

3 Read and correct the underlined words(s):

1. My mother **has visited** the Pyramids yet. (............)
2. Magdy has learnt to speak Italian **yet**. (............)
3. Have you eaten your meal **since**? (............)
4. I have visited India **yet**. (............)
5. They have **yet** bought this villa. (............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Haytham has created an app .... SB
a since b never c already d yet

2. Haytham .... any other apps yet. SB
a hasn't created b created c has created d creates

3. Have they arrived in Tanta .... ?
a since b ago c since d yet

4. Our friends haven't reached their goals ....
a never b yet c just d already

5. People in a few schools have .... used the app. SB
a yet b for c since d already

6. I can't believe it. Have you finished .... ?
a just b ever c since d already

7. He .... talked to some companies about his ideas. SB
a has already b have already c has yet d have yet

8. We've .... designed the bridge, but we haven't finished it yet. WB
a since b already c yet d for

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Have you gone to the new restaurant? SB (No)
....
2. Has she answered all the questions? (hasn't)
....
3. Has Hassan talked to three schools about pollution? WB (already)
....

3 Read and correct the underlined words(s):

1. Has she finished her homework **never**? (..............)
2. Mustafa **hasn't got** his prize already. (..............)
3. We **have written** any stories yet. (..............)
4. Muhammad **hasn't flown** to Germany already. (..............)
5. I haven't been to that restaurant **already**. (..............)

4 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

"A tournament"

....
....
....
....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What tournament are you writing about?
- How many competitors were there?
- How many games did they play?
- How many goals did they score?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I have watched .... recently.
- There were .... competitors.
- They played .... games.
- They scored .... goals.

Language Functions

1) Talking about achievements using the present perfect

التحدث عن الإنجازات باستخدام زمن المضارع التام

يسأل عن إنجازات شخص ما كالتالي:

- Which of these things have you done already?
- Which of these things haven't you done yet (but think that you will one day)?

Examples:

- I have already created an app.
- I haven't created any other apps yet.
- I have already got a job.
- I have already talked to some countries about my ideas.
- I haven't finished school yet.

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mohab is asking Hany about his achievements.

Mohab : What have you done already, Hany?

Hany : ❶ ....

Mohab : ❷ ....?

Hany : Yes, I have joined many school concerts for years.

Mohab : Have you won any awards?

Hany : Yes, I have. ❸ ....?

Mohab : I play the guitar. I will receive an award next week.

Hany : Really! ❹ ....! Is this the first time you receive an award?

Mohab : ❺ ....

Hany : Best wishes.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You ask Sami if he has already started university.

....

2. A friend asks you about an achievement you have just done.

....

3. Your sister asks you if you have done the shopping. You didn't.

....

Lessons 5, 6 & 7

SB pages 51-54 WB pages 106-108

Key Vocabulary

scholarship	منحة دراسية	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
score	مجموع النقاط / الأهداف	perform (ed)	يؤدي / يعزف
athlete	شخص رياضي	respond (ed)	يستجيب
later	فيما بعد / لاحقًا	connect (ed)	يصل / يوصل - يربط
culture	حضارة / ثقافة	guess* (ed)	يخمن

Verbs & Nouns

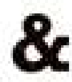
do homework	يعمل الواجب المنزلي	talk to friends	يتحدث إلى أصدقاء
watch TV	يشاهد التلفاز	play computer games	يلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر
clean teeth	ينظف الأسنان	get dressed	يرتدي ملابس
eat breakfast / dinner	يأكل طعام الإفطار / العشاء	have good news	لديه أخبار سارة

Vocabulary

Polish	بولندي	water pollution	تلوث المياه
teenager	مراهق	recycled water	مياه مُعاد تدويرها
international	دولي	dirty water	ماء غير صالح
swimmer	سباح	society	مجتمع
a fact file	ملف حقائق	share (d)	يشارك
preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادية	believe (d)	يعتقد
top university	أفضل جامعة	compare (d)	يقارن
problem solving	حل مشكلة	repair (ed)	يصلح
natural way	طريقة طبيعية	return (ed)	يعود
soon	قريبًا	research (ed)	يبحث
fourth	رابع	pretend (ed)	يتظاهر / يدعي
NASA	وكالة الفضاء الأمريكية (ناسا)		

Words & Meanings

scholarship منحة دراسية	money that a university or school gives to someone to pay for their education



Expressions & Prepositions

do an exam	يؤدى امتحان	Great job.	عمل رائع
do well	يبلي بلاءً حسناً	learn new skill	يتعلم مهارة جديدة
Well done!	حسناً!	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
follow a dream	يتبع حلم	come first	يأتي في المركز الأول
win a contest	يفوز بمسابقة	happy for	سعيد بشأن
respond to news	يستجيب لأخبار	connect .... with	يصل / يربط بـ
as a child	كطفل	compare ...with	يقارن...بـ
Guess what?	خمن ماذا؟	until now	حتى الآن
get 100%	يحصل على ١٠٠٪	send ....to	يرسل....إلى
get a scholarship	يحصل على منحة دراسية	find out	يجد

Word Differences

scholarship	منحة دراسية	scholar	طالب علم
later	فيما بعد/لاحقاً	letter	خطاب
connect	يصل / يوصل - يربط بـ	communicate	يتواصل
pollution	تلوث	population	السكان

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
bear	تلد	bore	born
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
break	يكسر	broke	broken

Language Notes



1) news

• كلمة (news) تعامل معاملة المفرد ولا نضع قبلها أدوات نكرة a / an ويليها فعل لفاعل مفرد :(v+s - is - was - does - has)

Ex. The news that he told me was important.

2) good - well

- **good (adj)** جيد (صفة)

Ex. They are good athletes.

- **well (adv)** بطريقة جيدة (ظرف)

Ex. The players played very well.

3) hard - hardly

- **hard (adj)** صعب/صلب/شاق...الخ

Ex. It's hard to drive in bad weather.

- **hard (adv)** بجد/بجدية/بقوة

Ex. The staff worked so hard in the company today.

- **hardly (adv) = almost not** بالكاد/بصعوبة/تقريبا لا...

Ex. I can hardly read without my reading glasses.

4) connect - contact - communicate

- **connect (ed)** يصل/يوصل

Ex. I try to connect with a university in the USA for a scholarship.

- **contact (ed)** يتصل بـ «لا تتبع بحرف جر»

Ex. You can contact us by email.

- **communicate (d)** يتواصل

Ex. Deaf people communicate with each other using sign language.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The latest news .... surprised me a lot.
   a have b are c has d were
2. I worked hard and I did .... in the last test.
   a well b good c will d bad
3. He works ...., so he is always successful.
   a hardly b hardship c harden d hard
4. This application helps to .... students with universities in the USA.
   a connect b tie c communicate d contact



Tapescript SB Page (51)

Malak : Hi Fareeda!

Fareeda : Hi Malak, guess*[1] what? I just got the results of my music exam!

Malak : Yes? How did you do?

Fareeda : I passed[2]!

Malak : Of course you did! Well done! Great job!

Fareeda : But also, I got the highest score[3] in the class!

Malak : Wow, you did really well - what an amazing achievement!

Fareeda : I can't believe it, I was so nervous doing the exam.

Malak : I knew you would do well. I'm really happy for you! You worked really hard.

Fareeda : Thanks Malak .

Arabic Meaning

١- يخمن
٢- يجتاز / ينجح
٣- مجموع الدرجات



Say it correctly

*g(u)ess — لا ينطق حرف (u) في هذه الكلمة



WB Page (106)

Mother : You look happy, Nader.

Nader : I am! I've won a short story competition!

Mother : Well done! Was that a competition at your school?

Nader : No, it was a short story competition for everyone.

Mother : For everyone? What an amazing achievement. Didn't you win the school competition last year?

Nader : Yes, I came second in the class, so I worked harder this year!

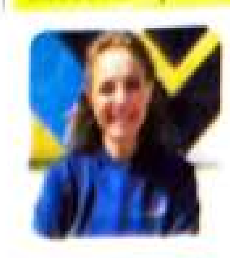
Mother : I knew you would do well. You worked really hard.

Nader : Thanks. I'll get the award next week.

Mother : I'm really happy for you! I'll come and watch!



SB P. (52)



Nada Zaher was born in Alexandria, Egypt. As a child[1], she played a lot of tennis. When she was a teenager[2], she found out that she had a sports scholarship[3] to go to Columbia University[4] in the USA. Then she went to the USA to study and play tennis. After university, she returned[5] to Egypt and decided to help more international athletes*[6] to study in other countries. So, she started a company to connect[7] athletes with universities in the USA and helped them to find scholarships. Now she helps students from Egypt and other countries to follow their dreams[8].

Arabic Meaning

١- كطفلة
٢- مراهقة
٣- منحة دراسية
٤- جامعة كولومبيا
٥- عاد
٦- رياضيون دوليون
٧- يصل / يربط
٨- أحلام

Say it correctly

*athlete

- تنطق الحروف (th) هنا كما تنطق في كلمة (think)
- وينطق المقطع (ete) مثل نطق كلمة (eat)

WB Page (106)

New Message

Hi,

I've got some good news[1]. I've won an award[2]! As you know, my family help every week at a hospital for children. We play games with the children and read them stories. The nurses[3] at the hospital decided[4] to give my family an award for our work. We're getting it next week! Can you come and watch us get it?

Send   

Arabic Meaning

١- أخبار سارة
٢- جائزة
٣- ممرضات
٤- قرروا

WB Page (107)



Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003. As a child she loved learning about science[1] and wanted to be a great scientist[2]. After she finished Preparatory School, she started at the Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths School (STEM)* in Alexandria. She then learnt more and more about science as well as how to look after the environment[3] and Egypt's culture. When she was at school, she came first[4]

Arabic Meaning

١- العلوم
٢- عالم
٣- البيئة
٤- حصل على المركز الأول

in Egypt in the NASA*[5] International Space Apps Challenge, a problem-solving[6] competition for scientists around the world.

Later, she worked on a school project[7]. She found a natural way[8] for villages to clean dirty water[9] and to recycle[10] used water. The recycled water is used to help plants to grow[11], and the project can also help to stop water pollution[12]. She sent her project to the Society for Science[13] in the USA. In 2021, her project won fourth[14] place in another international competition for science and engineering. Now, Fatma wants to do more things to help science.

٥- وكالة الفضاء الأمريكية (ناسا)
٦- حل مشكلة
٧- مشروع مدرسي
٨- طريقة طبيعية
٩- مياه غير صالحة
١٠- يعيد تدوير
١١- ينمو
١٢- تلوث المياه
١٣- مجتمع العلوم
١٤- الرابع

* NASA = The National Aeronautics and Space Administration.
الإدارة الوطنية للملاحة الجوية والفضاء (وكالة الفضاء الأمريكية) (ناسا)

* STEM
مدرسة (ستيم) للعلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات



* pollution
ينطق حرف (u) في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة (flu) وليس كما ينطق في كلمة (unit)

Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It will be hard to pass this exam with a high ....
   a score b school c scare d scholar
2. All .... in this tournament are tested for coronavirus.
   a scores b games c scholars d athletes
3. Yunis has passed his driving test! He did really .... WB
   a bad b well c badly d good
4. Mr Thompson's very proud to learn about Egyptian ....
   a adventure b result c culture d scholarship
5. Excellent students can get .... to study at Harvard University.
   a scholars b scholarships c schools d scores
6. Some countries which have no rivers try to .... used water.
   a recycle b pollute c learn d decide

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I promise I'll phone you **letter**. (..........)
2. You can **communicate** the printer to the computer. (..........)
3. My cousin has a **scholar** at a German university. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: How did Ola .... to your good news?
   B: She was very happy for me.
   a repair b spend c respond d perform
2. Amir works ...., but he is not very creative.
   a hard b badly c good d hardly
3. I usually .... dressed before I eat breakfast.
   a come b do c get d go
4. I have no time to call Doha; I'll call her ....
   a litter b later c letter d lately
5. A group of good musicians will .... in the concert tonight.
   a connect b respond c form d perform
6. How much will it take you to .... your homework, Samir?
   a get b do c make d perform
7. You're looking happy. Have you .... good news recently?
   a done b come c had d been
8. Randa's aunt has had a baby! We're really happy .... her. WB
   a with b to c on d for
9. Dr Ali helps to .... me with Beijing University to get a scholarship.
   a communicate b connect c comment d contest
10. Soha has got into Cairo University! I knew she would .... well. She worked really hard. WB
    a do b get c make d have

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Everyone should **clear** their teeth at least twice a day. (..........)
2. They will **response** to that news happily. (..........)
3. Egypt has a great **structure** so many tourists want to visit it. (..........)
4. It took me an hour to **get dress**. (..........)

Language Functions

Responding to good news — الاستجابة للأخبار السارة

- نعبر عن استجابتنا للأخبار السارة فنقول:

- Well done! Great news! — حسناً أخبار عظيمة!
- What an amazing achievement! — ياله من إنجاز مذهل!
- I'm really happy for you. — إني حقاً سعيد لك.
- You did really well. — أبليت بلاءً حسناً حقاً.
- You worked really hard. — لقد عملت بجد حقاً.

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue: SB

Fares is telling Mazen good news.

Fares : Guess what? I have good news.

Mazen : ❶ ....?

Fares : I have got a scholarship to a university in Canada!

Mazen : ❷ ....! That's incredible.

Fares : Yes, I can't believe it. I'm going to play tennis and study hard.

Mazen : I'm really ❸ .... Will you play at an important tournament soon?

Fares : Yes, ❹ ....

Mazen : Best wishes! I hope ❺ ....

Fares : Thanks a lot.

Mazen : You're welcome.

2 **Write what you would say in the following situations:**

1. Your younger brother has won a prize in a competition.

2. You have just received some good news.

3. You respond to your friend's great achievement.

Excel Yourself

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:**

1. Dalia has bought her friend's birthday present ....
   - a yet
   - b already
   - c just
   - d soon
2. A: Have the kids come back from school? B: No, not ....
   - a recently
   - b already
   - c yet
   - d just
3. My father .... to London once.
   - a went
   - b has gone
   - c goes
   - d has been

2 **Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:**

1. Have you ever visited Cairo Tower? (already)

2. I haven't had a mobile phone yet. (until now)

Azhar Exercises

تمرينات الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amr and Zeyad are talking about a handball match.

Amr : What're you doing?

Zeyad : ❶ .... It's Egypt against Chile.

Amr : ❷ .... ?

Zeyad : Yes, they have scored 25 goals so far.

Amr : ❸ .... ?

Zeyad : Yes, I have played handball since I was eight.

Amr : They are doing great job .

Zeyad : ❹ ....

2 Read and match:

A	B
1. The president will give	a. has already won the first prize.
2. Have you ever	b. that important app?
3. Leila	c. a speech tonight.
4. Who has created	d. good news for us.
5. Omar has got	e. entered a competition?

Answer 1-........ 2-........ 3-........ 4-........ 5-........

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your role model"

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- Who is your role model?
- Why is he / she a role model for you?
- What has he / she achieved?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- My role model is ....
- He / She is a role model for me because ....
- He / She achieved ....

General Exercises on Unit 5

A Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue: WB

Nader is telling his mother good news.

Mother: You look happy, Nader.

Nader: I am! ❶ ....

Mother: Well done! What was that competition about?

Nader: ❷ ....

Mother: ❸ .... last year?

Nader: Yes. I came second in class, so I worked harder this year!

Mother: I'm really happy for you. ❹ .... ?

Nader: I'll get the award next week.

Mother: I'll come and watch!

Nader: ❺ ....

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Ask your friend what he has achieved lately.

....

2. A friend asks you about your role model.

....

3. Your younger brother has got a good job.

....

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Marie Curie was born in Warsaw (1867-1934) Poland. She was taught in Warsaw high school. In 1891, she moved to Paris where she studied physics at the Sorbonne University. She received her degree in science in 1893. Two years later, she married the French chemist Piere Curie. Marie Curie needed money very much so she had to teach physics at a secondary school for girls. In 1903, she received Noble Prize for physics. Although her life was not long, she achieved many things in a very short time. She did many experiments and got many degrees and prizes in science. Her husband was also a great scientist who got many degrees in science and had many prizes. They were both very great scientists who served science and added many things to science.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Who was Marie Curie?

....

2. Who did she marry?

....

3. Why did she work in a secondary school?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. Marie Curie got a degree in ....
   a maths   b science   c physics   d art
5. Marie Curie was born in ....
   a 1867   b 1857   c 1866   d 1934
6. She studied physics in ....
   a German   b London   c Poland   d Paris

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The nurse won a special .... for helping so many people in the health emergency. WB
   a word   b ward   c award   d money
2. "..........." is a similar word to "players." SB
   a Competitors   b Contests   c Staff   d Volunteers
3. I love numbers. I .... a lot of very big numbers to work things out in my job! WB
   a using   b has used   c uses   d have used
4. The manager is a role .... for all his young men in the company.
   a medal   b model   c middle   d mode
5. There were nearly 80,000 .... in the stadium, and they all enjoyed the sports. WB
   a staff   b competitors   c spectators   d viewers
6. The students took turns to give a .... Mine was about playing chess! WB
   a speech   b space   c tournament   d reward
7. I've already won many tournaments in my country, but I haven't been to the Olympics .... WB
   a yet   b just   c already   d for

8. Haven't you done your exams .... ?

a since   b yet   c already   d ago

9. Doaa did well in the chess competition ....

a ago   b since   c yesterday   d already

10. The competitors haven't finished the race ....

a yet   b just   c already   d ago

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Gamila has just cleaned the floor of her room. (ago)

2. Have you got your university degree yet? (already)

3. I'm still doing my homework. (yet)

D Writing

6 Read and correct the underlined words(s):

1. This famous painting was painted by a great **art**. (..............)
2. The short form of television is **CD**. (..............)
3. I **have met** Amr five years ago. (..............)
4. She wanted to **wash** her favourite TV programme. (..............)

7 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on: SB WB

"A biography of a person (Swimmer Ali Khalafalla)"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **Where was Ali Khalafalla born?**
- **When did he start swimming?**
- **How did his parents help him?**
- **What achievements did he do?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **Ali Khalafalla was born in ....**
- **He started swimming ....**
- **His parents ....**
- **He achieved ....**

UNIT 6

What's wrong?

Objectives

Reading:

An online problem page; a blog about a problem; a news article about mindfulness; a case study about a problem

Writing:

A paragraph about ways to relax; an email suggesting how to help a friend; a poster helping people with mental health issues

Listening:

A conversation about teenage problems; a discussion about mindfulness; people talking about and responding to problems

Speaking:

Discussing teenage worries; showing that you are listening; suggesting solutions to problems

Language:

had to / didn't have to; was / wasn't able to; could / couldn't

Life Skills:

Empathy





1 & 2

SB pages 14-17 WB pages 109-110

Key Vocabulary

achievement	انجاز	positive	إيجابي
teenager = teen	مراهق	negative	سلبي
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	upset	منزعج / متضايق
social life	حياة اجتماعية	mental health	الصحة العقلية / النفسية
school work	أعمال مدرسية	billion	بليون (ألف مليون)
cyberbullying	التنمر الإلكتروني	secret	سر
skills	مهارات	understanding	تفاهم
abilities	قدرات	similar interests	اهتمامات متشابهة
appearance	المظهر	support (ed)	يدعم
anxious	قلق / متوتر	cyberbully (ed)	يتنمر عبر الانترنت
embarrassed	محرج	report (ed)	يبلغ عن / يخبر عن أن



Vocabulary

website	موقع على الانترنت	PE (Physical Education)	التربية البدنية
the UK	المملكة المتحدة (بريطانيا)	password	كلمة المرور
height	ارتفاع	behaviour	سلوك / تصرف
unkind	غير لطيف	even if	حتى لو
text message	رسالة نصية	since	لأن - منذ
common	شائع / منتشر	sort	نوع
daily life	الحياة اليومية	unsure	غير متأكد
helpful	متعاون	experience (d)	يخوض تجربة
each other	بعضهم البعض	receive (d)	يتسلم
importance	أهمية	share (d)	يشارك
technology	التكنولوجيا	encourage (d)	يشجع
teen problems	مشكلات المراهقة	fail (ed)	يفشل
opinion	رأى	disappoint (ed)	يحبط
terrible	فظيع	offer (ed) (n)	يقدم / يعرض - عرض
art club	نادى للرسم	look (ed)	يبدو
situation	موقف	suggest (ed)	يقترح
completely	تماما	worry (ied)	يقلق
scary	مخيف	study (n) (ied)	دراسة / يدرس

Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic	Meaning
achievement	إنجاز	something important that you have done
anxious	قلق	worried that something bad might happen
appearance	المظهر	the way that someone or something looks
billion	بليون	a thousand million
cyberbullying	التنمر عبر الانترنت	when you say unkind or cruel[1] things about someone online
embarrassed	محرج	feeling uncomfortable[2] when people are watching you
mental health	الصحة العقلية / النفسية	the health of your mind[3]; how happy you are
positive	إيجابي	seeing only good things
negative	سلبي	seeing only bad things
secret	سر	something that you do not want other people to know
social life	الحياة الاجتماعية	the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people
support	يدعم	help and encourage someone
upset	منزعج	unhappy because something bad has happened

Arabic Meaning

1. قاسي
2. غير مستريح
3. عقل

Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions		Prepositions	
What's wrong?	ماذا بك؟	worry about	يقلق بشأن
For me,....	بالنسبة لي....	think about	يفكر في
get anxious about	يقلق بشأن	embarrassed about	محرج بشأن
On the other hand,...	من الناحية الأخرى....	go out	يخرج
share experiences	يتشارك التجارب	look after	يعتني بـ
in a positive way	بطريقة إيجابية	unhappy with	حزين بشأن
Nobody knows	لا أحد يعرف	help ....with	يساعد.... في
fail a speaking test	يرسب في اختبار التحدث	different from / to	مختلف عن
finish school	ينهي الدراسة	a long way from	بعيد جداً عن
feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	belong to	ينتمي لـ / يخص
keep a secret	يحتفظ بالسر	laugh at	يسخر من
enjoy yourself	استمتع		
have a haircut	يقص شعره		
do well / badly	يبلي بلاءً حسناً/سيئاً		

Word Differences

mental	عقلي	physical	بدني
website	موقع على الانترنت	webpage	صفحة على الانترنت
nearly	تقريبا	nearby	قريب
situation	موقف	station	محطة
similar	مشابه	the same	نفس الشيء

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spread	ينشر/ينتشر	spread	spread
show	يعرض/يبين	showed	shown
spend	ينفق/يقضي	spent	spent
keep	يحتفظ بـ/يحفظ	kept	kept

Language Notes

1) feel (felt / felt)

- نستخدم فعل feel للتعبير عما نشعر به ويأتي بعده عادةً صفات مثل:

- **feel bad** يشعر بالأشياء/يشعر بالسوء/بالحزن/بوعكة صحية
- **feel upset** يشعر بالضيق
- **feel anxious** يشعر بالقلق
- **feel embarrassed** يشعر بالحرج

Ex. I felt upset when I read the bad comments on my post.

Ex. Salem asked me for some money and I felt embarrassed because I didn't have any.

2) spend (spent / spent) - waste (d)

- يستخدم الفعل (spend) مع الوقت بمعنى (يقضي وقت لفعل شيء معين).
- يستخدم الفعل (waste) مع الوقت بمعنى (يهدر/يضيع الوقت).

spend / waste + (time) + V-ing.

Ex. I spend lots of time playing video games.

Ex. It's bad to waste your time on social media.

- يستخدم الفعل (spend) مع المال بمعنى (ينفق مال).
- يستخدم الفعل (waste) مع المال بمعنى (يهدر/يضيع المال).

spend / waste + (money) + on + V.ing / noun

Ex. Ali spends much money on (buying) sports equipment.

Ex. Don't waste your money on (buying) silly things or you'll feel upset.

3) a day = daily = every day

- تأتى الكلمات والتعبيرات السابقة بمعنى (يوميًا):

Ex. He is paid 100 pounds a day / daily / every day.

- تأتى كلمة (daily) كصفة بمعنى (يومى) أو ظرف بمعنى (يوميًا).

Ex. I always check my daily mail. (يومى)

Ex. I check my mail daily. (يوميًا)

4) encourage

- **encourage + obj مفعول + to + inf.** يشجع .... ل.....

Ex. The teachers at our school encourage us to do activities.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nawal .... a lot of time searching for useful things on the internet.
   a) spends b) stands c) wastes d) says
2. I .... anxious waiting to hear about my exam results.
   a) fall b) failed c) felt d) filled
3. My dad always encourages me .... sports.
   a) doing b) do c) to doing d) to do
4. I have a shower .... in summer.
   a) days b) in day c) day d) daily

Tapescript نصوص الاستماع SB Page (55)



Hisham: I agree that most of these are common[1] problems for teenagers[2]. Most of us aren't completely[3] happy with our appearance[4]. I'm embarrassed[5] about being so tall, for example.

Kamal: You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height[6] is a positive[7] thing! For me, exams are a problem. I get very anxious[8] about them.

Hisham: I guess we're all good at different things, and not so good at others. I'm not bad at art or music, but I'm terrible at sports. I always feel that everyone is laughing at[9] me in PE.

Kamal: Cyberbullying is a problem, too. I'm glad I haven't experienced[10] it.

Arabic Meaning

١. شائع
٢- المراهقون
٣- تمامًا
٤- المظهر
٥- محرج
٦- الطول
٧- إيجابى
٨- قلق جدًا
٩- يسخر من
١٠- يخوض تجربة

Hisham: Yes, that is really scary[11]. For a few months, one of my sister's friends got unkind text messages from someone at her school. It made her feel really upset[12].

Kamal: What did she do?

Hisham: She told a teacher, and the school spoke to all the students about how it could hurt people. Then it stopped.

Kamal: It's good that she talked to someone about it.

Hisham: That's right.

١١- مخيف
١٢- منزعج

Say it correctly

*anxious

في هذه الكلمة ينطق صوت (k) بعد حرف n ويليه الصوت (sh) قبل حرف (s)

Reading
موضوعات القراءة

SB Page. (55)

Today, nearly four billion[1] people use social media[2] in their daily lives[3]. Some studies[4] have found that around 63% of people report[5] feeling upset and anxious after using social media. On the other hand, social media can be helpful because we can share experiences[6] and support[7] each other. People can spread[8] positive messages[9] this way about the importance[10] of looking after our mental health[11].

Arabic Meaning

١- بليون (ألف مليون)
٢- وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
٣- الحياة اليومية
٤- دراسات
٥- يبلغ عن / يخبر أن
٦- يشارك التجارب
٧- يدعم
٨- ينشر
٩- رسائل إيجابية
١٠- أهمية
١١- الصحة العقلية/ النفسية

Say it correctly

*social

ينطق حرف (c) في هذه الكلمة مثل (ش sh) ولا ينطق حرف i

SB Page (56)

Teen problems[1]



Nobody knows that I failed my English speaking test[2], and I feel very embarrassed[3] about it. Yesterday, I told my best friend and I said, "Please don't tell anyone because nobody knows. It's a secret[4]". The next day, my friend's mother, who is British[5], offered to help me with my English. I felt very unhappy with my friend because she told somebody. She said she was only trying to help me, but I don't want to tell her any of my secrets any more.

Magda

Arabic Meaning

١. مشكلات المراهقة
٢. اختبار تحدث لغة
٣. أشعر بحرج شديد
٤. سر
٥- بريطانية

Advice

Your friend shouldn't tell anyone your secret. Friends must keep secrets. However, you don't have to see this as a negative[6] thing since she only wanted to help. Why don't you think about your friend's mother's kind offer?

I have a lot of friends, but we have very different opinions about things. They say I mustn't talk to some people in the class. We don't always agree, and I feel that I am very different from them. It makes me feel lonely[8].

Salma

٦- سلبي
٧- لأن
٨- الشعور بالوحدة
٩- اهتمامات متشابهة
١٠- ينتمي لـ / يخص
١١- ينهي الدراسة
١٢- يخيب
١٣- متفهم

Advice

How about joining a club to meet people with similar interests[9]? You don't have to belong to[10] only one group of friends.

My parents want me to be a doctor when I finish school[11]. A doctor has to be good at science subjects, however, and the work is too difficult for me. I don't want to disappoint[12] them, but I really don't think I can be a doctor.

Advice

You should talk to them and tell them how you feel. They might be more understanding[13] than you think.

WB Page (109)

appearance

I had a haircut[1] last week and I think it is terrible[2]! I'm embarrassed to go out and see my friends!

Arabic Meaning

١- قص الشعر
٢- فظيع
٣- الحياة الاجتماعية
٤- التنمر عبر الانترنت
٥- غير لطيف
٦- يتلقى/يتسلم
٧- مهارات وقدرات
٨- نادي للرسم
٩- نادي للغة
١٠- نادي للموسيقى

social life[3]

All the students in my class go out all the time and visit each other's houses. I live a long way from the school, so I never go out or see any friends after school.

cyberbullying[4]

Somebody has sent a few of the boys in my class unkind[5] messages on social media. I'm worried that I will start receiving[6] them, too.

skills and abilities[7]

I've tried to join an art club[8], a language club and a music club[10], but every time I go, I can't do what they suggest. I'm just not good at these things!

achievements

My sister is 18 and she has won lots of competitions and done really well in her exams. I don't think I will ever be as good as her!

Videoscript

SB Page (55)

Social media is very popular in Egypt. Almost 50 million people in the country often use it. They spend three hours a day on average[1] to connect with their friends, watch videos and share photographs. People often communicate with each other in both Arabic and English on social media.

But do you know how people communicated with each other in the past? They weren't able to send messages or videos on their smartphones and they couldn't look at each other's photographs on social media.

Important events[2] in ancient Egypt were recorded using a form of writing called hieroglyphics[3]. But there were also people called "scribes[4]" who used an easier form of hieroglyphics called hieratic[5] to record what was happening every day. Scribes were important people and they recorded the laws[6], the food that farmers grew, and the amount of money people gave to the pharaohs[7] every year.

Because many people weren't able to write, they had to ask scribes to write letters and messages to send to their friends and family. In fact, we know a lot about Ancient Egypt today because of the work of these scribes. Maybe in the future, people will know about Egypt today because of all the social media messages.

Arabic Meaning

١- في المتوسط
٢- أحداث هامة
٣- اللغة الهيروغليفية
٤- الكتبة
٥- خاص باللغة الهيروغليفية
٦- قوانين
٧- الفراعنة

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm .... about being so tall. SB
   a achieved b suggested c behaved d embarrassed
2. I congratulated Ahmed on the great ....
   a secret b achievement c problem d disappointment
3. .... is when you say unkind or cruel things about someone online
   a Embarrassing b Disappointing c Supporting d Cyberbullying
4. For me, exams are a problem. I get very .... about them. SB
   a positive b helpful c anxious d understanding
5. The unkind text messages made her feel really .... SB
   a happy b upset c social d common

2 **Read and correct the underlined word(s):**

1. You look sad. **How's** wrong? (..........)
2. My father always **imports** me to do better. (..........)
3. I was **embarrassing** by the comments about my clothes. (..........)
4. Some people like to **cyber** others on the internet. (..........)
5. The doctor wants to check if the patient is in a good mental **wealth**. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your height is a/an .... thing. SB
   a positive b anxious c negative d unkind
2. As a ...., Samy is usually embarrassed and shy.
   a teenage b teenager c team d tent
3. .... life is the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people. SB
   a Social b Negative c Worried d Cyberbullying
4. Facebook and other social .... are used by many people.
   a media b model c medal d mood
5. Look! The .... of her is fantastic.
   a impoliteness b secret c appearance d teenager
6. He gave a .... answer to the teacher's questions. He said "No".
   a positive b negative c helpful d kind
7. Stress has an effect on both your physical and .... health.
   a metal b anxious c mental d negative
8. We were greatly encouraged by the .... we received.
   a support b kind c sort d website
9. Don't tell him any ....; he never keeps any.
   a teenage b appearance c height d secret
10. A .... is a thousand million.
    a billion b decade c balloon d century

2 **Read and correct the underlined words(s):**

1. The mother got **worry** about her son. He was very ill. (..........)
2. A **teenage** kicked the ball hard and it broke the car glass. (..........)
3. Reading books is always **negative**. It helps us a lot. (..........)
4. The child was crying and he was clearly very **glad**. (..........)
5. Many people like to enjoy their time with others. It's social **live**. (..........)



1- Obligation and necessity التعبير عن الإلزام والضرورة

must / mustn't - have to / has to

1. must

كل الضمائر + must + inf.

- تستخدم بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن ضرورة فعل شيء في الحاضر وهنا يعبر المتحدث عن ضرورة نابعة من المشاعر والرغبات الخاصة به

Ex. Friends must keep secrets.

mustn't

كل الضمائر + mustn't + inf.

- تستخدم بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن النهي أو التحريم.

Ex. I mustn't talk to some people in the class.

- يمكن السؤال بـ (هل؟) كما يلي: Must + فاعل + inf. ...?

Ex. Must I go to the train station on time?

- يمكن السؤال بكلمة استفهام كما يلي: كلمة استفهام + must + فاعل + inf..?

Ex. What must I do to be healthy?

2. have to / has to

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع → have to + inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has to + inf.

- تستخدم بمعنى (لابد أن / من الضروري أن) عندما نتحدث عن قواعد أو أمور مفروضة علينا ولا خيار لنا فيها في المضارع:

Ex. I have to be good at science subjects.
Ex. She has to get a passport to travel to London.

don't / doesn't have to

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + don't have to + inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't have to + inf.

- تستخدم بمعنى (ليس من الضروري أن) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع:

Ex. I don't have to see this as a negative thing.
Ex. She doesn't have to hurry. She isn't late for school.

• يمكن السؤال بـ (هل) في المضارع كما يلي:

Do / Does + فاعل + have to + inf. ..?

Ex. Do you have to do the job now?
- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

• يمكن السؤال بكلمة استفهام كما يلي:

كلمة استفهام + do / does + فاعل + have to + inf..?

Ex. What do you have to do before driving a car?

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where do the boys have .... today?
   a) to go b) going c) gone d) go
2. You .... be at school on time. It is a rule.
   a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) has to d) have to
3. Nada .... finish the test before 2 o'clock.
   a) has to b) have to c) haven't d) don't have to
4. You .... park here. It's against the law.
   a) mustn't b) have to c) must d) don't have to

لاحظ المتساويات الآتية:

(1) It is necessary (for...) / It is important (for...) } to + inf. = فاعل + must + inf. / have, has to + inf.

(2) It isn't necessary (for..) / It isn't important (for..) } to + inf. = فاعل + don't / doesn't + have to + inf.

(3) فاعل + am / is / are + not allowed / It is against the law } to + inf. = فاعل + mustn't + inf.



Rewrite جزء لتدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

1) It is necessary for him to sleep well. **(must)**

• نقوم بحذف (It is necessary for) ونحول ضمير المفعول (him) إلى ضمير فاعل (He) ثم نضع الفعل (sleep) بعد (must)

He must sleep well.

2) It isn't necessary for her to clean the room. **(have to)**

• نقوم بحذف (It isn't necessary for) ونحول ضمير المفعول (her) إلى ضمير فاعل (She) ثم نضع مصدر الفعل (clean) بعد (doesn't have to)

She doesn't have to clean the room.

3) You have to be at work at 8 o'clock. **(necessary)**

• لاستخدام (necessary) بدلا من (have to) نستخدم الصيغة الآتية

It's necessary (for + اسم/ضمير مفعول + to + inf. مصدر الفعل

It is necessary for you to be at work at 8 o'clock.

4) You aren't allowed to smoke here. **(mustn't)**

• لاستخدام (mustn't) نحذف (aren't allowed to) لأنها تساويها في المعنى

You mustn't smoke here.

2- Giving advice إعطاء النصيحة

should / shouldn't ينبغي / ينبغي ألا

• نستخدم should / shouldn't لإعطاء النصيحة أو التحدث عن أشياء ينبغي أو لا ينبغي أن نفعلها. ودائما ما يأتي بعدهما مصدر الفعل:

• للنصيحة بفعل شئ نستخدم:

Subject فاعل + should + inf. ينبغي أن

Ex. You should talk to them.

• للنصيحة بعدم فعل شئ نستخدم:

Subject فاعل + shouldn't + inf. ينبغي ألا

Ex. People shouldn't tell others this sort of information.

• لطلب النصيحة نستخدم:

١. سؤال بـ (هل ...؟)

Should + فاعل + inf...?

Ex. Should I go out now?

Yes, you should. الإجابة في الإثبات

No, you shouldn't. الإجابة في النفي

٢. سؤال بأداة استفهام

Question word + should + فاعل + inf...?

When should we visit Mr Omar?

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: .... I do my homework now?
   B: Yes, you should.
   a) What should b) Shouldn't c) Have d) Should
2. This dog is angry. You .... go near it.
   a) should b) must c) shouldn't d) aren't

١. نستخدم مصدر الفعل فقط بدون to بعد should / shouldn't

Ex. You should study well.

٢. لاحظ استخدام الأفعال الآتية بعد should / shouldn't

be / have / do

Ex. You should be more careful.

Ex. Ahmed should have his books with him today.

Ex. You should do your homework after school.

٣. التعبيرات الآتية تستخدم لتقديم النصح وكلها تساوي **should / shouldn't**

Expressions	Examples
• If I were you, I would (not) + inf.	• If I were you, I would see that film.
• It is important (for ...) (not) to + inf.	• It is important (for Omar) to do exercise.
• I advise you (not) to + inf.	• I advise you not to smoke.
• It's advisable (for ...) (not) to + inf.	• It's advisable for you to drink enough water.
• It's dangerous (for ...) (not) to + inf.	• It's dangerous (for you) to cross the road here.
• It's better (for ...) (not) to + inf.	• It's better (for Ali) not to eat too many sweets.
• It's a good idea (for ...) (not) to + inf.	• It's a good idea (for you) to use a dictionary.



Drills

Rewrite [illegible]

1) If I were you, I'd travel abroad. (should)

• [illegible] (I'd + should + الفعل) للتقديم النصح وقمنا بحذف الجزء الذي يعبر عن نفس المعنى (If I were you, I'd [illegible])

You should travel abroad.

2) I advise you not to eat too much. (shouldn't)

• نحذف (I advise you not to) ونضع مكانها (You shouldn't).

You shouldn't eat too much.

3) It's a good idea to go home. (should)

• نحذف (It's a good idea to) ونضع مكانها (You should...).

You should go home.

4) You shouldn't leave your things here. (advise)

• نحذف (You shouldn't) ونضع مكانها (I advise you not to.....).

I advise you not to leave your things here.

5) You shouldn't play with matches. (It's dangerous)

• نحذف الجزء الذي يعبر عن نفس المعنى (ينبغي عليك ألا You shouldn't) ونضع مكانه (It's dangerous for you to)

It's dangerous for you to play with matches.

6) You should revise before the exam. (important)

• نحذف الجزء الذي يعبر عن نفس المعنى (ينبغي عليك أن you should) ونضع مكانه (It's important for you to)

It's important for you to revise before the exam.

7) You shouldn't stay up late. (should)

• لكي نستخدم (should) هنا لابد أن نقوم بعكس المعنى.

You should sleep early.

8) You should see a doctor. (It's advisable)

• نحذف (You should) ونبدأ الجملة بـ (It's advisable for you to)

It's advisable for you to see a doctor.

3- might (be) ربما (يكون)/ might not (be) ربما (لا يكون)

• تستخدم might (not) عندما نكون غير متأكدين من حدوث شيء ما في المضارع.

Ex. The phone is ringing. It might be Sameh, but I'm not sure.

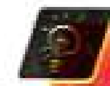
Ex. No one answers the phone. There might not be anybody there.

• تعبيرات مساوية لـ might تدل على عدم التأكد من حدوث شيء

- I'm not sure	لست متأكدًا	- It's probable...	من المحتمل
- I'm not certain	لست متأكدًا	- I (don't) think	(لا) أعتقد
- Perhaps	ربما	- I don't know	لا أعرف
- It's possible...	من الممكن		

Ex. Perhaps I will win a prize. = I might win a prize.

Check ✓



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Your car is so big. It .... be very expensive.
   a must   b might   c mustn't   d has to
2. She.......... come early; I'm not sure.
   a must   b can't   c might   d should

Drills

Rewrite جزء تدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

1) Perhaps this man is English. I'm not certain. (might)

- المطلوب استخدام "might" فنحذف "Perhaps" والفعل "is" وعبارة "I'm not certain"
ونستخدم "might be" بعد الفاعل.

This man might be English.

2) Omar isn't at school today. It's possible that he is ill. (might)

- المطلوب هنا استخدام "might" فنحذف الجزء المساوي في المعنى وهو "It's possible that"
ونستخدم (might be) بعد الفاعل.

Omar isn't at school today. He might be ill.

3) Our teacher might be absent today. (I'm not sure)

- نحذف (Our teacher might) ونبدأ الجملة بـ (I'm not sure if Our teacher)

I'm not sure if our teacher is absent today.

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'll tell you a secret, but you .... tell anyone. WB
   a mustn't b don't have to c might not d must
2. You .... get a passport to travel abroad.
   a has to b must c should d might
3. Tarek is worried because he .... do badly in his exams. WB
   a must b has to c might d have to
4. You .... wear a school uniform. it's one of the school rules.
   a have to b might c should d are
5. There is a knock طرقة on the door. It .... be Hala, but I'm not sure.
   a might b should c mustn't d has to

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It is necessary for you to arrive on time. (must)

   ....

2. Perhaps Sameh could join the university. (might)

   ....

3. You don't have to buy eggs; we have got a lot. (not necessary)

   ....

4. My advice to you is to drink enough water every day. (should)

   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Friends **must** tell secrets to anyone. (..................)
2. We **mustn't** listen to our parents. (..................)
3. You have to **arriving** at school on time. (..................)
4. My brother **don't have to** wear a uniform at work. (..................)
5. I **shouldn't** visit my grandparents. I haven't seen them for a long time. (..................)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... know the password before you can use that computer. WB
   a might b should c must d mustn't
2. Girls .... learn to cook well; it's advisable.
   a should b might c must d have to
3. My father .... go to work at 6 am tomorrow for a meeting. WB
   a might b has to c should d mustn't
4. Judy .... attend the party wearing a new dress. I don't know.
   a should b must c mustn't d might
5. I .... get up early tomorrow because it is a holiday! WB
   a don't have to b shouldn't c mustn't d must
6. What .... we do inside the museum? I don't know the rules.
   a might b should c has to d mustn't
7. Don't clean the kitchen, Ola; it's .... I have cleaned it.
   a necessary b not necessary
   c against the law d advisable

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It's advisable for Ramy to have a rest from work. (Ramy)
   ....
2. All the guests have to pay for their stay before leaving the hotel. (necessary)
   ....
3. Rana is absent. It's possible that she is ill. (might)
   ....
4. You aren't allowed to park here. (mustn't)
   ....
5. We have got enough tickets. Don't book any. (don't have to)
   ....

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. People **should** throw rubbish in the streets. (..................)
2. My uncle might **to join** us tomorrow. (..................)
3. He **must to revise** for his exam. (..................)
4. You should **knocks** on the door before you enter. (..................)
5. You **must** cross the street now, the cars are really fast. (..................)

4 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

"What you must or mustn't do at school"



[أجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب]

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What must you do at school?
- What mustn't you do?
- Must you take your smartphone to school?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- There are many rules ....
- We must ....
- We mustn't ....

Language Functions

1 Discussing the use of technology and social media

مناقشة استخدام التكنولوجيا ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعى

- توضح المحادثة الآتية الجوانب الإيجابية والسلبية فى استخدام التكنولوجيا ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعى:

A: How many people use technology and social media?

B: Today, nearly four billion people use technology and social media.

A: How does using them affect our mental health?

B: Around 63% of people report feeling upset and anxious.

A: But they can be helpful.

B: Sure. People can share experiences and support each others.

A: So we can use them in a positive or negative way.

B: Yes, you're right.

2 Discussing teenagers' problems

[illegible]

تسأل وتجيب عن المشكلات التي يواجهها المراهقون كالآتي:

A: What problem is / are .... embarrassed about?

ما المشكلة التي يحرج بشأنها ...؟

B: .... failed his / her speaking test.

رسب في اختبار التحدث.

A: Why is .... unhappy with her friend?

لماذا ... غير سعيدة مع صديقتها؟

B: He / She doesn't keep secrets.

هو/هي لا يحفظ الأسرار.

A: Why does .... think his friends are different to him?

لماذا يعتقد ... أن أصدقاءه مختلفون عنه؟

B: They have very different opinions about things.

لديهم آراء مختلفة.

A: How does .... feel about science subjects?

كيف يشعر ... بخصوص المواد العلمية؟

B: They are difficult to him / her.

صعبة بالنسبة له/لها.

A: Why is .... anxious about what his parents will think?

لماذا ... قلق لما يفكر فيه والديه؟

B: They want him / her to be .... and he doesn't want to disappoint them.

إنهم يريدونه أن يكون ... ولا يريد أن يحبطهما.

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Samar about how she can chat using the internet.

Ahmed : Hello, Samar.

Samar : Hi, Ahmed .

Ahmed : What are you doing?

Samar : ❶ ....

Ahmed : ❷ ....?

Samar : You just need a smartphone and internet.

Ahmed : Can you see each other?

Samar : ❸ ....

Ahmed : That's a great! ❹ ....?

Samar : Yes, you can ❺ ....

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your teacher asks you how social media affect our mental health.

....

2. Your mum asks you why you are unhappy with your friend.

....

3. You tell your parents how you feel about science subjects.

....

4- You tell a friend how technology can be helpful.

....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58 - 60 WB pages 111 - 112

Key Vocabulary

mind	العقل	include (d)	يشمل / يتضمن
mindfulness	التركيز الزهنى / اليقظة	joke (d) (n)	يمزح - مزاح - نكتة
mindful	منتبه/يقظ	breathe (d)	يتنفس
feelings	مشاعر	relax (ed)	يسترخى
breathing	عملية التنفس	cyberbully (ied)	يتنمر عبر الانترنت
angry	غاضب		

Vocabulary

blog	مدونة على الإنترنت	happiness	سعادة
certain	معين/محدد	review	مقال نقدى
popular	محبوب/شعبى	dentist	طبيب أسنان
comment	تعليق	waterfall	شلال
online	عبر الانترنت	life jacket	سترة النجاة
carefully	بحرص	engine	محرك (موتور)
brave	شجاع	comfortable	مستريح
mistake	خطأ	realise (d)	يدرك
badly	بشكل سيء	apologise (d)	يعتذر
luckily	لحسن الحظ	revise (d)	يراجع
tired	مُتعَب	describe (d)	يصف
baker's	مخبز	face (d)	يواجه
calmly	بهدوء	improve (d)	يحسن/يتحسن
deeply	بعمق	push (ed)	يدفع للأمام
daily news	أخبار يومية	mention (ed)	يذكر
afterwards	بعد ذلك	lock (ed) (n)	يقفل بإحكام - قفل
thoughts	أفكار	plan (ned) (n)	يخطط - خطة

Words & Meanings

Word		Arabic Meaning
joke	يمزح	say something to make people laugh
cyberbully	يتنمر عبر الانترنت	say unkind or cruel[1] things about someone online
include	يشمل/يتضمن	allow or want someone or something to be part of something
mindfulness	التركيز الذهنى/اليقظة	being able to relax by calmly thinking about your feelings and what is around you at the moment
relax	يسترخى/ يستريح	become comfortable and less worried
breathe	يتنفس	take air in and out of your body
feelings	مشاعر	what you feel, such as happy, upset, etc.

1- قاسى

Expressions  Prepositions

Expressions		Prepositions	
have a positive result	يحقق نتائج إيجابية	go home	يذهب للمنزل
say sorry	يتأسف	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
hurt ..... badly	يصيب ....بشدة	on a boat	فى قارب
(be) friends with	يصاحب/يصادق	breathe in	يتنفس (شهيق)
do something wrong	يرتكب خطأ	breathe out	يتنفس (زفير)
brave enough to	شجاع بدرجة كافية لـ	revise for a test	يراجع من أجل اختبار
face your mistakes	واجه أخطائك	go into	يدخل
stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر	at the moment	فى اللحظة
do better	يؤدى بشكل أفضل	think of	يعتقد
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	(a) part of	جزء من
It sounds great.	يبدوا عظيماً.	walk around	يتجول
do / have a test	يجرى اختبار	kind to	عطوف على

Word Differences

joke	يمزح - نكتة	laugh at	يسخر من
blog	مدونة	block	يسد - كتلة
baker's	مخبز	baker	خباز

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
sing	يغنى	sang	sung



1) online (adv) - online (adj)

- **online (adv)** عبر الإنترنت

Ex. Never cyberbully anyone online.

- **online (adj) + (n اسم)** مباشر على الإنترنت

Ex. Some online messages can hurt people badly.

2) everyday - every day

- **everyday (adj)** يومي

Ex. Social media is used widely in everyday life.

- **every day (adv)** كل يوم

Ex. I go to work every day.

3) breathe - breathing - breath

- **breathe (v)** يتنفس

Ex. The doctor asked me to breathe deeply.

- **breathing (n)** عملية التنفس

Ex. Astronauts have special breathing equipment.

- **breath (n)** نَفَس (الهواء الذي يدخل الرئتين)

Ex. Take a deep breath and you will feel relaxed.

4) (go - come - get - reach - arrive) home

- تستخدم هذه الأفعال مع كلمة (home) بدون حرف جر

Ex. I came / reached / got / went / arrived home late yesterday.

5) include - contain - consist of

- **include** يشمل / يتضمن

Ex. The coach included me in the team.

- **contain** يحتوي على شيئ بداخله

Ex. What does that box contain?

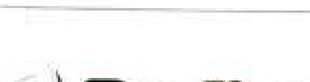
- **consist of** يتكون من (ما بعدها يشكل كل ما قبلها)

Ex. A football team consists of eleven players.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like reading .... papers.
   - a online
   - b inline
   - c lined
   - d timeline
2. Using the internet became part of .... life.
   - a every day
   - b a day
   - c on day
   - d everyday
3. The room is full of smoke; I can't ....
   - a breathe
   - b breathing
   - c breath
   - d breathed
4. I asked the music teacher to .... me in the new school choral.
   - a contact
   - b consist
   - c contain
   - d include



Reading موضوعات القراءة SB Page (58)



I always wanted to be part of a certain group[1] of popular[2] students. One day, they suggested that we cyberbully[3] a boy in my class called Eyad, so I wrote an unkind comment[4] about him on social media.

I thought that my friends would think it was funny. I didn't realise[5] that they were joking,[6] and I was the only one to write an unkind comment.

Eyad read my comment and the next day he didn't want to come to school. I had to tell my parents, and they couldn't understand why I did it. Then, the other students did not want to include[7] me in their group. I am so embarrassed about[8] what I did.

However, I hope my experience[9] will have a positive result,[10] too. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested[11]. You should think before you do something. Some online[12] messages can hurt people very badly.

I was able to say sorry[13] to Eyad the next day. He is very kind and now we are friends. So, you should choose your friends carefully[13] and always be kind to people.

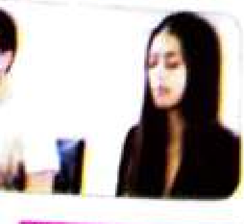
Hussein

Arabic Meaning

١- مجموعة معينة
٢- محبوب
٣- يتنمر عبر الانترنت
٤- تعليق
٥- يدرك
٦- يمزح
٧- يتضمن
٨- محرج بشأن
٩- تجربة حياتية
١٠- نتائج إيجابية
١١- يقترح
١٢- في الانترنت
١٣- يعتذر
١٤- بحرص



THE DAILY NEWS



As part of a plan[1] to improve[2] students' mental health,[3] more than 350 schools in the UK recently introduced mindfulness[4] as a part of the timetable[5]. In mindfulness class, students learn to breathe*[6] slowly and to only think of the present. It isn't easy.

We usually think about things we have done in the past or things we have to do in the future. However, trying to think only about the present helps us to relax,[7] and to really think deeply[8] about everything we are doing at the moment. This helps to stop us from feeling[9] anxious or worried about things we have done or have to do. Students say that mindfulness helps them to feel better[10] about themselves, and afterwards,[11] they do better[12] at their school work, too.

Arabic Meaning

١- خطة
٢- يحسن
٣- الصحة العقلية/ النفسية
٤- التركيز/اليقظة
٥- جدول مواعيد
٦- يتنفس
٧- يستريح/يسترخى
٨- بعمق
٩- الشعور
١٠- يشعر بتحسن
١١- بعد ذلك
١٢- يؤدى بشكل أفضل



* **breathe**

لاحظ أن حرفى (th) فى هذه الكلمة ينطقان مثلما ينطقا فى كلمة (this)

WB Page (111)

Last week, my uncle took me out on his boat. I had to wear a special life jacket[1] and he said I had to walk carefully around the boat but I couldn't run. We travelled a long way, and after two hours, I wasn't able to see the beach, only the sea. Then the engine[2] stopped! We tried to start it, but we couldn't. I was able to swim well, but I knew that I wasn't able to swim to the beach. So my uncle could telephone for help! They said they could send a helicopter[3] to help us. However, suddenly[4] the engine started again! So, we didn't have to go home on a helicopter.

Arabic Meaning

١- سترة نجاة
٢- محرك (موتور)
٣- طائرة مروحية
٤- فجأة

WB Page (112)

Ashraf : I understand my feeling better now. For example, when I feel angry[1], I play a sport. I usually find I play better!

Lamar : It's a nice, sunny day in spring. My friends want me to play a game with them, but I'm feeling anxious[2]. We had a test last week and I did badly[3]. We have another test next week and I don't think it will be easier.

Hisham: It's morning. I can hear the wind in the trees and the birds singing[4]. I am breathing[5] slowly and carefully.

Arabic Meaning

١- غاضب
٢- قلق
٣- بشكل سيئ
٤- يغني
٥- يتنفس



SB Page (60)

Boy 1 : In mindfulness classes, we learn that it's OK to have negative thoughts[1], like when we feel angry. We don't have to feel bad about that. It helps me to understand my feelings. And try to turn them into something positive. Mindfulness is about being kind to yourself, and kind to other people, too.

Girl 1 : In the class, you have to close your eyes, breathe in[2], count[3] to 5, then breathe out[4] slowly. Breathing like this makes you feel calm[5].

Boy 2 : In the class, we try not to think about all our problems, we should only think about the things that are around us. Think about the present only, what's happening right now. The reason for this is we can't change the future or the past, we can only do something about the present.

Girl 2 : In mindfulness, you have to learn to find happiness[6] in simple things. For example, when you eat a favourite food, think about how it smells, tastes and looks. This is a new way of doing everyday things.

Arabic Meaning

١. افكار سلبية
٢- يستنشق الهواء
٣- يعد
٤- يخرج الهواء
٥- تشعر بالهدوء
٦- سعادة

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The patient began to .... again normally.
   a) breath b) breathe c) breathing d) breathed
2. Although Reem's brother is only five, Reem always .... him in her games. WB
   a) includes b) contains c) applies d) consists

3. This school introduces .... as a part of the timetable.
   a carelessness   b mindfulness   c comment   d cyberbulling
4. The review of the book has nothing .... to say about it. It sounds great!
   a positive   b expensive   c active   d negative
5. You must tell your parents or the teacher if someone tries to .... you online.
   a cyberbully   b joke   c breathe   d improve

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The boy fell off his bike and was hurt **well**. (..................)
2. You shouldn't stay up **date**. It's healthy to sleep early. (..................)
3. Clever people usually have **negative** comments. (..................)
4. You can communicate on people **in** social media. (..................)
5. Your teacher will be **hungry** if you don't do your homework. (..................)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandmother always .... and makes us laugh when we visit her.
   a includes   b cyberbullies   c jokes   d revises
2. Divers always check their .... equipment before diving.
   a breaking   b feeding   c proving   d breathing
3. Never write unkind .... about your friends. It's bad.
   a communication   b connects   c comments   d commas
4. You should show kind .... towards others.
   a feelings   b breathing   c blogs   d jobs
5. .... is not something we want to see or hear about at our school.
   a Feeling   b Cyberbullying   c Mindfulness   d Studying
6. I want to be .... with a certain group of students in my school.
   a friends   b relatives   c cousins   d brothers
7. Listening to soft music will help you ....
   a apologise   b joke   c relax   d include
8. I realized that I had made a mistake and .... sorry to my friend.
   a talked   b said   c told   d reviewed

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. It's hard to **breathing** when there is smoke. (..................)
2. You should be **mindless** of what they say. (..................)
3. This is a silly one. Tell me another funny **jacket**. (..................)



1- Necessity and Unnecessity in the past الضرورة وعدم الضرورة فى الماضى

• راجع شرح الضرورة وعدم الضرورة فى المضارع [Lessons 1-2].

كل الضمائر + had to + inf.

• تستخدم بمعنى (اضطر إلى/ كان من الضروري أن) عندما نتحدث عن أمور كانت مفروضة علينا في الماضي:

Ex. I had to tell my parents about the problem that I faced.

كل الضمائر + didn't have to + inf.

• تستخدم بمعنى (لم يكن من الضروري أن) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي:

Ex. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested.

لاحظ المتساويات الآتية:

It wasn't necessary (for..)
It was unnecessary (for..)
It wasn't important (for..)
} to + inf. = فاعل + didn't + have to + inf.

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I couldn't attend the last part of the film because I .... leave the cinema early.
   a have to b had to c must d mustn't
2. You .... go to the concert yesterday; it was cancelled.
   a didn't have to b have to c don't have to d mustn't



Rewrite جزء تدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

1) It wasn't necessary for Huda to get angry. (didn't)

- لإستخدام (didn't) فى هذا المعنى نضيف بعدها have to لتعبر عن عدم الضرورة فى الماضى ونحذف (It wasn't necessary).

Huda didn't have to get angry.

2) We didn't have to go to the club. The training was cancelled. (unnecessary)

- نحذف (didn't have to) ونبدأ بـ (It was unnecessary)

It was unnecessary for us to go to the club. The training was cancelled.

2- Ability and Inability in the past القدرة وعدم القدرة فى الماضى

Ability القدرة

could / couldn't - was / were (not) able to

• للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + was / were able to + inf.

Ex. I was able to say sorry to Eyad.

Ex. We were able to push the car.

فاعل + could + inf.

Ex. I could swim when I was six.

Inability عدم القدرة

• للتعبير عن عدم القدرة في الماضي نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

فاعل + (was / were) not able to + inf.

Ex. I wasn't able to come with you to the concert because I was ill.

فاعل + could not (couldn't) + inf.

Ex. My brother couldn't swim until he was about ten.

Question السؤال

• يمكن السؤال عن القدرة فى الماضى بـ (هل......؟) كما يلي:

Was / Were + فاعل + able to + inf......?

Ex. Was Jana able to walk to school?

- Yes, she was. الإجابة في الإثبات - No, she wasn't. الإجابة في النفي

Could + فاعل + inf.........?

Ex. Could you read when you went to school?

- Yes, I could. - No, I couldn't.

• يمكن السؤال بـ كلمة استفهام كما يلي:

كلمة استفهام + was / were + فاعل + able to + inf ....?

Ex. What were you able to do at the museum?

كلمة استفهام + could + فاعل + inf ....?

Ex. What could Hassan do when he was in Alexandria?

Check ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People were able .... TV in the 1960s.
   a) watch b) to watch c) of watching d) watching
2. I .... ride a horse when I was young.
   a) can't b) was able c) can d) could

لاحظ الآتي

١- يستخدم الفعل (could) في الإثبات عادةً للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي دون تحديد موقف معين.

Ex. I could drive a car at the age of ten.

• بينما يستخدم الفعل (couldn't) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة في الماضي سواء مع تحديد موقف معين أو بدون تحديد.

Ex. I couldn't go shopping yesterday because I was so tired.

٢- تستخدم (was / were able to) للتعبير عن القدرة في موقف معين في الماضي، وتستخدم (was / were not able to) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة في موقف معين في الماضي.

Ex. I was able to get full marks last year.

Ex. I wasn't able to do the homework as I was outside.

لاحظ الفارق بين الجمل الآتية:

Ex. I arrived at the station late, but I was able to catch the train.

• من الخطأ هنا أن تستخدم (could) حيث أن الجملة تعبر عن قدرة في موقف معين.

أما في حالة النفي

Ex. I couldn't / wasn't able to win the first prize.

• هنا من الصواب أن نستخدم أيًا من (couldn't) أو (wasn't able to)

Drills

Rewrite جزء لتدريب الطالب على حل سؤال

1) Yesterday, I wasn't able to do exercise. **(couldn't)**

- تحذف (wasn't able to) ونضع مكانها (couldn't) لأنها تساويها في المعنى:

Yesterday, I couldn't do exercise.

wasn't / weren't able to + inf. = couldn't + inf.

2) All the students succeeded in answering well. **(able)**

- تحذف succeeded in ونستخدم بدلا منها were able to ويليها answer

All the students were able to answer well.

3) Mohamed had the ability to iron his clothes himself. (could)

- نستخدم (could) ويليها مصدر الفعل (iron) للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي.

Mohamed could iron his clothes himself.

had the ability to + inf. = could + inf.

4) Why couldn't he carry this box? (able to)

- نحذف (couldn't) ونضع مكانها (wasn't able to) مع ملاحظة وضع (wasn't) قبل الفاعل لأنها صيغة سؤال.

Why wasn't he able to carry this box?

5) When Munir was ten, he drove so well. (could)

- لاستخدام could هنا نوضع مباشرة قبل الفعل بعد تحويله إلى مصدر (drive) لتعبر عن قدرة في الماضي.

When Munir was ten, he could drive so well.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... understand the film because it was in a language I don't understand. SB
   a could b couldn't c was able to d wasn't able
2. Hana lost her ticket to the concert, but luckily, she .... to buy another one that evening. SB
   a couldn't b wasn't able c was able d able
3. Hazem is really tired this morning. He .... stay up late last night to revise for a maths test. SB
   a have to b had to c can d was able
4. He .... walk home. I gave him a drive.
   a don't have to b had to c could d didn't have to
5. It was very windy, so planes .... to leave the airport. WB
   a could b were able c were not able d was able

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. In the mountains, we had the ability to see an amazing waterfall. WB (able)

   ....

2. It wasn't necessary for Nada to do the washing up. Her mum did it. (didn't)

   ....

3. It was necessary for Tarek to arrive at school on time yesterday. (had to)

4. Was it easy for you to climb mountains in the past? (Could)

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I **wasn't able** climb that tree when I was six. ( )
2. They **have to** take a taxi yesterday. ( )
3. **Have** you have to go to school last week? ( )
4. Mustafa **can swim** in the Red Sea last summer. ( )

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Malak .... buy more rice because we had lots already. SB
   a had to b could c didn't have to d has to
2. Sorry Mum, I .... do your shopping for you, because the shops were closed when I got there. SB
   a could b wasn't able to c was able to d don't
3. I could play football when I was young, but I .... swim.
   a couldn't b was able to c had to d didn't have to
4. You .... make coffee for us. We have a machine to make it! SB
   a didn't have to b wasn't able to c couldn't d mustn't
5. I tried to go into the building, but the door was locked and I .... to open it. SB
   a wasn't able to b have to c was able to d could
6. .... you do maths sums when you were at school?
   a Have to b Was you able to c Could d Had
7. Before we had the internet, we .... find all our information in books. SB
   a don't have to b have to c had to d didn't have to
8. I'm sorry, I .... phone you yesterday.
   a wasn't able to b have to c could d don't have to
9. The baker's was closed, but we .... buy some bread from the shop next door. SB
   a couldn't b was able to c were able to d didn't have to
10. I .... ask my friend so many personal questions as he got annoyed.
   a didn't have to b could c were able to d has to

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It was necessary for Heba to phone me before she came to my house (had to)

2. It was difficult for me to dive when I was young (couldn't)

3. Did you have the ability to get a prize in the last competition? (Were)

4. Shady didn't have to help his younger sister. She is so clever. (not necessary)

3 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I couldn't <u>reading</u> in English when I was very young. ( )
2. She <u>can</u> go swimming last weekend. ( )
3. Alaa <u>was able</u> sing well when he was at the party. ( )
4. Magda didn't <u>had to</u> buy bread as she had a lot in the fridge. ( )

4 Write an email of about 110 words: SB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

to your friend Fawzy apologizing to him for a mistake you made.

- **Your name is Foad and your email address is foad555@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's email address is fawzypost@hotmail.com**

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- **Why do you write this email?**
- **What do you want to explain to Fawzy?**
- **Who made the mistake?**
- **How do you feel?**

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I write to you to ....**
- **I have to say ....**
- **My friends and I suggested............... .**
- **I'm so embarrassed about ....**

Language Functions

Being still good friends with someone

البقاء على صداقة قوية مع شخص ما

- للسؤال والإجابة عن قوة الصداقة بين الأشخاص نقول:

A: Do you think that .... is still good friends with......?

- هل تعتقد أن ....مازال فى صداقة قوية مع.............؟

B: Yes, I think so. / No, I don't think so.

A: Do you think that .... is a good friend? Why / Why not?

- هل تعتقد أن ....صديق جيد؟

B: Yes, I think so. He never cyberbullies other students.
No, I don't think so. He always cyberbullies other students.

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Salem is talking to Mrs. Amal about a problem with his friends.

Mrs Amal : Why do you look upset?

Salem : ❶ ....

Mrs Amal : ❷ .... ?

Salem : They want me to start smoking.

Mrs Amal : ❸ .... ?

Salem : No, I didn't. I know that it's wrong and harmful.

Mrs Amal : They are bad friends and you should ❹ ....

Salem : ❺ ....

Mrs Amal : That's right. We should be friends with good people.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. A friend asks you if your friend Tamer is still good friends with you.

....

2. You ask your brother if his friend Omar is a good friend.

....

Lessons 5, 6 & 7

SB pages 61 - 63 WB pages 113 - 115

Key Vocabulary

good listener	مستمع جيد	Go on	استمر فى/تابع (الحديث)
meet up with	يلتقى/يتقابل مع	make you feel sad	يجعلك تشعر بالحزن
an example	مثال	listen (ed)	ينصت إلى
clear	واضح		

Important phrases

cope with a problem	يتعامل مع مشكلة	interrupt someone when they are talking يقاطع شخص أثناء الكلام

Vocabulary

advice	نصيحة	poster	ملصق
only if	فقط إذا	depressed	مكتئب
without	بدون	diary	يوميات
serious	خطير/جاد	digital word cloud	سحابة كلمات رقمية
clearly	بوضوح	tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى (تابلت)
skill	مهارة	seem (ed)	يبدو
way	طريقة/طريق	explain (ed)	يشرح/يفسر
video games	ألعاب الفيديو	mind (ed)	يمانع
member	عضو فى (أسرة/نادى مثلاً)	trust (ed)	يثق
ability	قدرة	email (ed)	يرسل بريد الكترونى
machine	آلة/ماكينة	try (ied)	يحاول
medicine	الطب		

Words & Meanings

Word		Meaning
clear	واضح	easy to understand
cope with	يتعامل مع	manage[1] or be able to do something, although[2] it is difficult
interrupt	يقاطع أثناء الكلام	stop someone from speaking or doing something by suddenly speaking

Arabic Meaning
1- يتصرف
2- بالرغم من

Expressions  Prepositions

Expression	المعنى	Expression	المعنى
give ..... advice	يعطي....نصيحة	explain my feelings	يفسر مشاعري
give ... an example of	يعطي.....مثال على	as soon as possible	في أقرب وقت ممكن
make sure	يتأكد	ask for	يطلب
make .... laugh	يجعل.....يضحك	leave for school	يغادر للمدرسة
get ready	يستعد	interested in	مهتم بـ
do nothing	لا يفعل شيء	wear in red	يرتدي لوناً أحمر
do the shopping	يتسوق	tell... about	يخبر.....عن
do the housework	تقوم بأعمال المنزل	unhappy about	غير سعيد بشأن
feel worse	يشعر بالأسوأ	happy with	سعيد بشأن
the way she looks	الطريقة التي تبدو عليها	angry with	غاضب من
go well	تسير على ما يرام	calm down	يهدأ
work harder	يعمل بجد أكثر	of course	بالطبع
look interested	يبدوا مهتماً		

Word Differences

Word	المعنى	Word	المعنى
advice (n)	نصيحة	advise (v)	ينصح
else	آخر	also	أيضاً
listen	ينصت	lessen	يقلل
members	عضو (في أسرة / نادي مثلاً)	organ	عضو (في الجسم)
too	أيضاً (للإثبات)	either	أيضاً (للنفي)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
say	يقول	said	said
see	يرى - يفهم	saw	seen
tell	يخبر	told	told
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
get	يصل / يحصل على	got	got
break	يكسر	broke	broken
meet up	يلتقي / يتقابل	met up	met up
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn



1) Expressions that help you to order an email

- تستخدم التعبيرات الآتية فى كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى لكى نرتب الأحداث:

- I will start by saying .... سأبدأ بقولي ....
- First of all, ... أول كل شيء، ....
- Secondly, ... ثانياً ....
- Finally, ... أخيراً ....

2) else (adv)

• تستخدم كلمة **else** بمعنى (آخر) بعد كلمات مثل : (somewhere - everything - anybody)

Ex. I'm bored. Let's do something else.

• تستخدم مع كل الكلمات الأخرى التي تبدأ بـ: no - some - every - any وتنتهي بـ body - one - thing - where مثل:

everywhere	somewhere	anywhere	nowhere
everything	something	anything	nothing
everyone	someone	anyone	no one
everybody	somebody	anybody	nobody

Ex. Do you want anything else?

• تستخدم بعد Why/How/Where/What/Who

Ex. Who else won a medal?

3) stop

- **stop + V-ing** يتوقف (عن شئ كان يفعله)

Ex. He stopped bullying others.

- **stop + to + inf.** يتوقف لكى

Ex. While he was working, he stopped to drink coffee.

4) proud

- **proud of + noun / V-ing.** فخور بـ

Ex. I'm proud of my country.

Ex. I'm proud of achieving many goals.

- **proud to + inf.** فخور أن

Ex. I'm proud to work for an international bank.

5 fast - early - late

الكلمات السابقة تستخدم كصفات وأحوال. لاحظ أن الصفة تصف الاسم والحال يصف الفعل.

صفة بمعنى (سريع)

Ex. Salah is a fast player.

حال بمعنى (بسرعة)

Ex. I usually drive fast.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I washed up, mum; do you want anything ....
   a else b too c also d again
2. Mona can't stop .... about her future.
   a thinks b thinking c think d to thinking
3. I am proud .... Osama as a friend.
   a had b have c to having d to have
4. Salah ran .... and scored a goal.
   a slowly b early c fast d lately



SB Page (61)



Arabic Meaning

١- مكتئب
٢- أرسب في امتحاناتي
٣- الطب
٤- في أقرب وقت ممكن

1 **Boy 1** : My friends aren't talking to me anymore. I feel really depressed[1] about it, I don't know what to do.

Boy 2 : Oh, don't worry about them! They're boring anyway. You can find new friends.

2 **Boy 3** : What's wrong, Khaled?

Boy 4 : I'm really worried about something.

Boy 3 : Tell me about it. What happened?

Boy 4 : I heard some bad news yesterday.

Boy 3 : Go on. It might help to talk about it, you know.

3 **Girl 1** : I think I'm going to fail my exams[2].

Girl 2 : Well, you aren't the only one. I'm doing badly, too.

Girl 1 : But I really want to get good results. I want to go to university and study medicine[3].

Girl 2 : I don't want to go to university! I want to get a job as soon as possible[4] and earn some money. Have I told you about my plan to travel to America?

Girl 3 : I'm worried about my friend. She's got a new group of friends and I think they aren't good for her.

Girl 4 : I see. What makes you say that?

Girl 3 : She just seems different. She's not the same person I used to know.

Girl 4 : It's clear you're unhappy about it. Can you give me an example of what you mean?

Girl 3 : She's not working hard at school anymore. When I speak to her about it, she just laughs and says I'm boring.

Girl 4 : That must make you feel very sad.

WB Page (113)

Mazin : I had a terrible[1] day at school.

Mother : Tell me about it. What happened?

Mazin : It was my English class. You see ...

Mother : Go on[2]. It might help to talk about it, you know.

Mazin : We had a test and I was last in the class!

Mother : That must make you feel very sad.

Mazin : It was so difficult.

Mother : Can you give me an example[3] of what you mean[4]?

Mazin : Well, I didn't understand what they wanted me to write.

Mother : It's clear[5] you are unhappy about it. Why don't we talk to the teacher?

Arabic Meaning

١- سيء / فظيع
٢- استمر / تابع (الحديث)
٣- مثال
٤- تعني
٥- واضح

Reading موضوعات القراءة

SB Page (62)

Dalia gets ready[1] for school! She can hear her parents talking to her older brother[2]. He is not doing well at school and they are worried about his exams. She is worried about her brother, too. Before leaving for school, she says goodbye to her brother. He doesn't look happy and this makes her feel even worse[3].

Dalia tries to stop her brother playing video games[4]. She tells him that he should study, but he does not listen. Then she looks on social media for some advice, but she can't find anything useful. Instead, her friends just tell her about what they did that day.

Arabic Meaning

١- لمستعد
٢- الأخ الأكبر
٣- أسوأ
٤- ألعاب الفيديو

****

The first lesson at school is science. Dalia works hard and does some good work.

The afternoon lessons don't go well. Dalia can't stop thinking about her brother. How can she encourage him to work harder?

Dalia goes home. Her brother is playing video games. Dalia's parents don't know what to do about him.

She wants to tell her friends about her worries, but she finds it difficult to talk about her feelings. So she tells them she had a good day.

SB Page (63)

I'm worried about my friend. She is so unhappy[1] about her appearance. How can I help her feel more positive about herself? People like her and she has won prizes[2] for her art; the only negative thing about her is her opinion of herself. It's really bad for her health.

I'm sorry she feels this way. You say that she has won art prizes - you could try to tell her that this is a wonderful[3] achievement.

I've just moved here and I'm the only person in my class who isn't from this country. I'm embarrassed to talk to people because I can't speak the language well. I haven't told anybody about this and I want it to be a secret. My parents know I feel a bit[4] lonely but they don't know why.

It can be upset being the only person from another country, but don't worry about your language ability[5]. Try to breathe in and out calmly, and then talk to people. Nobody minds[6] when people make mistakes!

Arabic Meaning

١- غير سعيدة
٢- فازت بجوائز
٣- رائع
٤- قليلة
٥- قدرة
٦- يمانع

WB Page (114)

New Message

Hi friends,

I want to write about Dalia. I will start by saying we must do something. If we do nothing, Dalia will continue[1] to feel lonely and upset. This will not help her.

So, first of all[2], it would be a good idea to talk to Dalia. She must tell us her feelings. Then, we will know how best to support[3] her.

Secondly, why don't we talk to her teacher? I think it will be difficult to talk to her parents, but the teacher can tell them that Dalia is worried about her brother. I think this might help.

Finally, I think we should tell her that we are proud[4] to have her as a friend. We should help her with her school work and also take her out so she can relax[5] after school. This will make her feel better. Do you all agree? Email and let me know.

Best wishes, Riham.

Send

Arabic Meaning

١- تستمر
٢- أولا
٣- يدعم
٤- فخور
٥- يسترخي

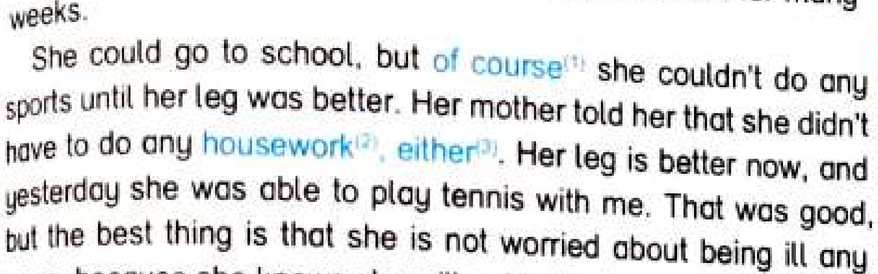
WB Page (114)

Taha's friends all live near to their school. When they have finished their homework, the friends all meet up to play in the park. Sometimes, they help each other with their school work, too. Taha lives a long way from the school. It takes an hour for him to get home to his small village. He does not have a father and he is worried because his mother is ill. So when he gets home, he has to look after his younger brothers and sisters. He does not have much time to do his school work.

WB Page (115)



Ola always worried about being ill. Then, a few months ago, she had to go to hospital after she broke her leg. She was able to go home the next day, but she wasn't able to walk for many weeks.



She could go to school, but of course[1] she couldn't do any sports until her leg was better. Her mother told her that she didn't have to do any housework[2], either[3]. Her leg is better now, and yesterday she was able to play tennis with me. That was good, but the best thing is that she is not worried about being ill any more, because she knows she will get better!

Arabic Meaning

١- بالطبع
٢- أعمال المنزل
٣- أيضا

Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

Check Up **Exercises**

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I decided to .... with my cousins next Friday. We're going to the park. WB
   a cope   b meet up   c match up   d help
2. Mr Ashraf is a good .... and understanding to his students.
   a poster   b baker   c member   d listener
3. Go .... It might help to talk about it, you know. SB
   a up   b into   c in   d on
4. It's .... to me that Ahmed is very good at running. He is so fast! WB
   a clean   b fast   c clear   d serious
5. I asked dad to .... me some advice about my future.
   a trust   b keep   c help   d give

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. When someone talks to you, you should **lessen** to them. (..........)
2. Some people can't cope **in** the problems they have. (..........)
3. Success makes us **feeling** proud. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you give me a/an .... of what you mean? SB
   a advice b example c skill d ability
2. The company offered the job to someone ....; not me.
   a also b too c else d as well
3. Mohammed Salah is a .... footballer.
   a fast b quickly c last d well
4. .... me about it. What happened? SB
   a Say b Tell c Say d Listen
5. Young children are not good listeners because they often .... WB
   a interrupt b explain c trust d mind
6. There are five .... in my family.
   a organs b members c parts d kinds
7. I see. What makes you .... that? SB
   a feel b listen c talk d go
8. Students should .... sure they answered all the questions of the exam.
   a take b get c make d do
9. It's better to .... with your problems, not to let them unsolved. بدون حل
   a cope b keep c care d mind
10. It's .... you are unhappy about it. SB
    a clearly b ready c angry d clear

2 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I meet **on** with my pen friend every time I go to New York. (..........)
2. Go **off**. I'm listening to what you say. (..........)
3. How often do you **make** the housework? (..........)
4. The point is **clean** for me to understand. (..........)
5. Salem is interested **on** riding bikes. (..........)



1 Showing good listening skills

توضيح مهارات الاستماع الجيد

- لتكون مستمع جيد للآخرين، عليك اتباع الآتي:

- Don't tell them what to do.
لا تخبرهم ماذا يفعلون.
- Give them advice but only if they ask for it.
أعطهم النصيحة فقط إذا طلبوها.
- Listen without interrupting them.
استمع دون أن تقاطعهم.
- Look interested in what they are saying.
اهتم بما يقولون.
- Ask questions to make sure you really understand the problem.
وجه أسئلة لتتأكد أنك حقاً تتفهم المشكلة.
- Show that you are listening.
بين أنك تستمع.
- Tell them everything is OK and their problem isn't serious.
أخبرهم بأن كل شيء على ما يرام وأن مشكلتهم ليست بالخطيرة.
- Try to help them explain their feelings more clearly.
حاول أن تساعدهم على تفسير مشاعرهم بوضوح أكثر.

2 Speakers' expressions to show they are listening

تعبيرات للمتحدثين تبين أنهم ينصتون

- يستخدم المتحدث الكلمات والتعبيرات الملونة ليبين أنه ينصت:

- Tell me about it. What happened?
- Go on. It might help to talk about it, you know.
- I see. What makes you say that?
- It's clear you are unhappy about it.
- Can you give me an example of what you mean?
- That must make you feel very sad.

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Jana is talking to her mother about a terrible day at school.

Mother : Why do you look unhappy, Jana?

Jana : ❶ ....

Mother : Tell me about it. .... ?

Jana : It was my English class. You see.

Mother : ❷ .... It might help to talk about it, you know.

Jana : We had a difficult test and I was the last in the class.

Mother : It's clear ❸ ....

Jana : ❹ ....

Mother : ❺ ....?

Jana : Well, I didn't understand what they wanted me to write.

Mother : Why don't we talk to teacher?

2 Write what you would say in the following situations:

1. You're listening to a friend's problem. Show you're a good listener.

....

2. Your friend has a problem. You're listening to him / her. What do you say?

....

3. You encourage your friend to continue telling you his problem.

....

4. You try to help your brother to explain his feelings more clearly.

....

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. He was able to cross the canal fast. This means that he .... the ability to cross it.
   a do b get c has d had
2. Children .... swim in the swimming pool alone. They aren't allowed to do that.
   a don't have to b shouldn't c mustn't d aren't
3. .... I have to brush my teeth this morning?
   a Did b Must c Do d Should

2 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. You mustn't smoke in a hospital. (law)

....

2. Why couldn't Samir solve his problem? (wasn't)

....

General Exercises on Unit 6

A Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

You have just moved to another country and you have a problem.

Teacher : Are you fine?
You : ❶ ....
Teacher : ❷ .... ?
You : I'm embarrassed because ❸ ....
Teacher : Don't worry. I can give you advice.
You : ❹ .... ?
Teacher : You can practise English with me daily.
You : Really! ❺ .... What else?
Teacher : You can listen to English much more.
You : That's good. Thank you.

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your father asks you why your friend Ali is a good friend.
....
2. A friend asks you what a good listener does.
....
3. You tell your teacher why you feel lonely at school.
....

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One of the modern communication sites of the internet is social media. People can communicate through social media. Social media have now become an important way of the human lifestyle.

The use of social media has grown worldwide, and it has made some changes in our lives. People use social media to express themselves and connect with others. Social media have received users of almost all ages, but the young use social media the most.

Social media have helped connect people from all corners of Earth. Social media have also helped businesses to reach their customers.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What are social media?

....

2. How can social media help businesses?

....

3. Why do people use social media?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The young are the .... users of social media.
   a least b fewest c worst d most
5. Social media have made a great .... in our lives.
   a charge b change c page d cage
6. Social media have become an .... way of the human lifestyle.
   a important b bad c unimportant d sad

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can give you a/an .... of what I mean.
   a excuse b exit c example d exam
2. I'm sorry to ....; but can I ask you a question?
   a interrupt b inter c cut d interest
3. Tarek .... go to the dentist because his teeth hurt. WB
   a have b didn't have to c couldn't d had to
4. Your address wasn't clear, but I .... find your house.
   a couldn't b was able to c mustn't d wasn't able to
5. Policemen ride horses well. It's one of their ....
   a skills b rules c questions d exams
6. We should let teenagers express their .... freely.
   a blogs b jokes c comments d feelings
7. We should never .... other people on the internet.
   a cyberbully b include c breathe d push
8. My sister .... married to a dentist two years ago.
   a did b made c got d moved

9. How .... write all these stories?
a could you
b were you able
c you could
d was you able

10. What do you .... do before leaving for school?
a has to
b had to
c have to
d must

5 **Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:**

1. It is dangerous to play with matches, Waleed. (mustn't)

....

2. She had the ability to cook well when she was young. (could)

....

3. This poor man couldn't buy the expensive car. (able)

....

D Writing

6 **Read and correct the underlined word(s):**

1. Cyberbullying is a **positive** thing. (............)
2. My advice to you is to **come** with your problems. (............)
3. The cat wasn't able **catch** the bird. (............)
4. The joke you told us was very funny it made us **cry**. (............)

7 **Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:**

"Ways to relax"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب)

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- **What is today's life full of today?**
- **What can you do to avoid worries and stress?**
- **How can relaxing help you?**
- **How can you relax?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **Today's life is full of** ....
- **Relaxing can help you** ....
- **Relaxing is good for your** ....
- **You should meet up with** ....

Review B

SB pages 64-65   WB pages 116-117

Key Vocabulary

list	قائمة	female	انثى - انثوى
swimming club	نادى للسباحة	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كاليمنجارو
national	محلى/قومى	writing competition	مسابقة فى الكتابة
equal	متساوى - عادل	train station	محطة قطار
opportunity	فرصة	organize (d)	ينظم
busy life	حياة مزدحمة بالعمل	support (ed) (n)	يدعم - دعم
Paralympics	الألعاب البارالمبية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة	train (ed)	يدرب - يتدرب



Reading موضوعات القراءة SB P. (64)



Aya Ayman Abbas is a young Egyptian Paralympic[1] swimmer[2] with an incredible list of achievements. She was born in Cairo and she joined a swimming club when she was six. She couldn't walk, but at the age of eight, she was already swimming in national[3] competitions. When she was 16, Aya became the first and youngest[4] Egyptian swimmer to enter the 2016 Rio Paralympic Games.

Aya had to face many challenges in her life. When she first started swimming, there weren't any swimming teams or equal[5] opportunities[6] for disabled people. Aya was able to achieve her goals with the support of her parents. However, since that time, life has become a lot more positive for young disabled athletes.

Aya is now a member of the Egyptian Paralympic team. Although she has a busy life[7] as a university student, she is also a campaigner for disabled sports people. She hasn't stopped training since her last event. She is a true role model to all Egyptians!

Arabic Meaning

١- من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
٢- سباح
٣- محلى/قومى
٤- الأصغر سنًا
٥- متساوى - عادل
٦- فرص
٧- حياة مزدحمة بالعمل



Police in Australia found a man who was lost in the desert for 18 days. Robert Webber, who is 58, has driven from his hotel in the morning of January 2nd. He was not able to move his car after he went down a small farm road[1]. He tried to walk back[2] to his hotel, but he couldn't remember the way. For many days, Robert had to drink water from rivers and eat what food he could find. Nearly three weeks later, a man has found Robert sitting under a tree. He was tired but well.

"Robert has already drunk lots of water and feels better now, but he hasn't slept much yet," said a police officer. "Remember that you must tell people when you drive somewhere in the desert," he said. "You don't have to drive along small roads either. They are not always safe."

Arabic Meaning

١- طريق إلى مزرعة
٢- يسير عائدًا



SB Page (64)

Conversation: 1

Ola : What's wrong, Lina? Has something bad happened? You look really unhappy.

Lina : It's nothing. I'm just a bit anxious, that's all.

Ola : Tell me about it. What are you anxious about?

Lina : Well, you know it's the national maths competition soon.

Ola : Yes. Go on.

Lina : I've revised for it since the beginning of the year, and my parents think I will do very well. But I'm worried that I'm going to do very badly and that my parents will be disappointed.

Ola : I see. Would it help to talk to the maths teacher? Perhaps she could help you revise some of the things you are less positive about.

Lina : Yes, I could do that. That's a good idea, Ola, thanks.

Conversation 2

Hany : Hi, Tamer! I haven't seen you for a long time. Are you OK?

Tamer : Well...

Hany : I can see there's a problem. Why don't you tell me about it?

Tamer : I'm too embarrassed to talk about it Hany. I'm afraid I've done something wrong.

Hany : Go on ... maybe it will help to talk to someone else about it.

Tamer : One of my school friends told me a secret, and I told someone else. That was wrong. He's really angry with me now, and I can understand why.

Hany : I'm sorry to hear that. It must be very sad for you both. Is there anything you can do?

Tamer : I've tried to say I'm sorry, but he doesn't want to talk to me. He hasn't spoken to me since it happened.

Hany : You could try sending him an email? It's often easier to write about how you feel than to talk about it.

Tamer : Yes, you might be right ... thanks Hany. I think I'll try that.

WB Page (117)

Conversation 1

Wael : Hi Ziad. Has the bus arrived yet?

Ziad : No, it hasn't Wael.

Wael : How long have you been here?

Ziad : I've been here for twenty minutes .

Wael : The bus is very late. Shall we walk?

Ziad : Good idea.

Conversation 2

Nawal : Hi Marwa. How are you?

Marwa : Hi Nawal I'm tired! I've not slept for hours.

Nawal : Have you arrived at the hotel yet?

Marwa : No! We've already flown for eight hours, but now we have to take a train.

Nawal : So you're at the train station?

Marwa : No, we haven't left the airport yet.

Conversation 3

Mother : Hi, Hisham. Have you done well?

Hisham: Hi, Mum. Yes, I think I was second.

Mother : Well done! What an amazing achievement! Have you got a medal?

Hisham: No, they haven't told us who has won yet. I might be first!

Mother : I'm really happy for you. You did really well.

General Exercises on Review B

A Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hisham and Nawal are talking about social media.

Hisham: Do you like social media?

Nawal : ❶ ....

Hisham: ❷ ....?

Nawal : Because it's helpful and friends can support each other. What about you?

Hisham: I disagree, because I feel anxious and worried after using it.

Nawal : ❸ ....?

Hisham: Well, I feel that my friends don't want to include me in their group.

Nawal : I see, ❹ ....

Hisham: OK! I'll try to talk to them again.

Nawal : ❺ ....

2 Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You want to know how long your friend has lived in his house.

....

2. A friend of yours asks you which competition did you enter.

....

3. Your teacher asks you why you are unhappy with your friend.

....

B Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The famous saying "knowledge is power" was said by Francis Bacon. This saying means that knowledge is really the most powerful. Knowledge is the difference that prefers man to animals. Human beings are said to be the most powerful creatures because of the power of knowledge.

Knowledge plays an important role in our lives and lets us know the ways to solve problems. Although money is important, nothing is more powerful than knowledge. However, money cannot buy knowledge. Knowledge can only be achieved through hard working and continuous practice.

Review B

Knowledge helps us improve our life. We need to share our knowledge with others for the development of the others. So, we can say that knowledge is a way to success and happiness.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Who said the famous saying 'knowledge is power'?

2. What does this saying mean?

3. Why is knowledge a great thing?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Money .... buy knowledge.
   a cannot b can c may d do
5. We need to .... our knowledge with others.
   a like b share c post d comment
6. We are powerful .... because of the power of knowledge.
   a creatures b animals c ways d tools

C Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather likes to tell us about his incredible .... when he lived in the desert. SB
   a charities b experiences c medals d results
2. When you are upset, try to talk to a good friend who is .... and will listen to you. SB
   a understanding b disabled c creative d busy
3. Aya says she has loved swimming .... she was a child. SB
   a ago b for c since d just
4. Please, don't .... the teacher when she is talking. SB
   a join b organize c listen d interrupt
5. Aya has won the Egypt Cup three times .... SB
   a just b yet c since d already
6. The games for disabled people are called .... Games.
   a Paralympic b Incredible c Olympic d Fantastic
7. Yesterday, I called my teacher "Dad" and everyone laughed. I felt very ....! SB
   a joking b embarrassed c anxious d better
8. She took my advice and .... to solve the problem.
   a couldn't b wasn't able to c was able to d were able to

9. Children under five .... swim here. It's one of the rules.

   a mustn't b have to c must d don't have

10. How long has your daughter .... married?

   a be b is c are d been

5 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. She was the first female Egyptian swimmer to win medals at a World Championship for eleven year. **SB** (since)

   ....

2. No other Paralympic Egyptian girls have been faster swimmers than Aya yet. **SB** (already)

   ....

3. I have entered this competition for many years. **SB** (How long)

   ....

D Writing

6 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I teach my students how to **care** with problems. (..............)
2. This business person knows how to achieve his **aims** easily. (..............)
3. Safia Zaghloul was a **competitor** for human rights. (..............)
4. You **have to** add salt. The food is salty already. (..............)

7 Write a paragraph of about 110 words on:

"Your father is your role model"

....

....

....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- **Who is your role model?**
- **Why are you proud of him/her?**
- **What has he/she achieved?**
- **Would you like to be like his/her? Why?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **....... is my role model.**
- **I'm proud of him/ her because.....**
- **He/She has achieved......**
- **I'd like to be like him/her because...**

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات انشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني وردت بالوحدات

Paragraphs

Unit 1

- Your city

I live in Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez. Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive buildings and interesting monuments. There isn't a lot of traffic so there isn't much pollution. There are lots of things to do here. On Monday afternoons, I often go fishing with my family. Ismailia has a beautiful lake and wonderful beaches. On Tuesday mornings, I have football lessons at the sports centre at 8 am. Sometimes I go swimming in the afternoon with my friends. There are also some interesting museums in Ismailia! My favourite is the Natural Science Museum because I'm interested in animals.

Unit 2

1- Items that you have in your kitchen

My kitchen has modern items. I have an expensive kettle. I use it to get hot water. It is useful. I also have a microwave. It helps me cook food very quickly. It is more useful than the kettle. It is also more expensive. My dad bought me a toaster last year. I use it to make bread turn brown. It is less useful than the microwave. It is also less expensive. I have a big fridge. I use it to keep foods and drinks cool. It is the most useful item in my kitchen. It is the most expensive, too.

2- A problem that you had with technology

Yesterday, I went to the town centre with my mum. We wanted to get a new phone. We took the bus. The road took about half an hour. I bought a cool new phone! On our way home, we met some of my friends. I showed them my new phone while we were walking down the road. As I was giving my friend the phone to look at, he dropped it. The phone broke! My friend felt very bad and I was sad. He apologized to me for dropping the phone, and I said it was OK.

3- A review of something you bought online

Last week, I saw that my parents were interested to have a coffee machine. So, I decided to get them a good one. I bought it as a present for them. They are very happy with it. It helps mum make the coffee dad likes. It looks great in their kitchen and it is easy to use. It is also quiet. It makes delicious cups of coffee. The delivery was quick, too! I only waited for one day! The price was really good. It was really a good deal!

4- Handicrafts that you can buy in your area

I need to buy some handicrafts from the shops and markets in my area. I want to get a beautiful wooden box. I need it decorated with shells. I think it doesn't cost much. People

like to buy it because it keeps their jewellery safe. I also need to buy a leather bag and a pot. The leather bag must be made of soft leather. I need it brown. People like to buy it because it is made of excellent leather. The pot must be colourful. People like to buy it because its traditional designs are amazing.

Unit 3

1- What you can do to help poor people in your community

I live in a great community. However, it has got some problems. I was sad to see how many people are poor in my community. I work for a project in my community. We have a good plan that can make a difference to the poor people. We're going to help them. We are going to help deliver medicines to their houses. We plan to help find work for them. Helping the poor is an important thing. We must all do our best to help them. I really feel proud about that.

2- Leisure and sports facilities in your town

We have many leisure and sports facilities in my town. We all love our Town Club. It is really wide and it has got many courts where we can play. My friends and I like going there every Monday. We usually play handball. My sister and her friends usually play basketball there. My dad sometimes joins the reading club every Friday. We also love our Town Park. It is full of wonderful trees and long benches. My family and I like spending time there. It is a nice place where we can have fresh air. My friends and I sometimes play chess there.

3- The best and worst items of technology in your house

The best item of technology in my house is the smart speaker. I bought it as a present for my sister. She was very happy with it. It looks great and it is very easy to use. We can use it on your television or to play music. It gives us excellent sounds. The worst item of technology in my house is the toaster. I got it as a present from one of my friends. It looked good in the kitchen. However, when we used it, the bread turned dark brown. I was not very happy with it. It was horrible.

Unit 4

1- Experiences in your life

I was born into wonderful family. I have lived in a town in the south of Egypt all my life. I like living here.There are lots to do. I joined a handball club and I have won lots of matches with my team. It's really fun. I have never been to another country, but last year I visited Cairo with my uncle and my cousins! It was so big and busy, but it was fun. We went to lots of museums because I am very interested in history.

2- A story you have just read

I've just read a nice story. It was about a poor fisherman who lived by the sea. One day, while he was fishing, he caught a magic fish. "If you let me go, I'll give you a wish," said the fish. The fisherman was very excited. "I wish I lived in a palace," he said. When he got home, he saw that his wish came true. The next day, the fisherman caught the magic fish again and the fish gave him another wish. "I wish I was rich," he said. When he got home, his palace was

full of gold. The magic fish decided that the fisherman became too greedy. It took away all of the fisherman's wishes, and the fisherman was poor again.

3- Your favourite hobby

Reading is my favourite hobby. I go to the school library twice a week. There, the librarian helps me choose which books and stories to read. I prefer history books and adventure stories. I also go to the bookshop to buy a new book or a new story. When I get a new book, I read it and write a review about it. I tell my friends about all new things I have learned. I usually enter reading competitions in my school and sometimes on the internet. I once won a prize when I wrote a review of the story of "Oliver Twist".

4- Holidays

We all like going on holidays. After a long time of hard work, people all over the world like spending their holidays on beaches. Among the well-known places, Hurghada is the most wonderful. People who are lucky enough to be there get very excited. They like the sunny weather. Being on the Red Sea coast makes them enjoy snorkelling and diving. People can do other water sports. They can water-ski, go sailing or go fishing. They can go on sea trips. They spend wonderful time in the most beautiful place on the Red Sea. Holidays are our best way to relax.

Unit 5

1- An interesting job

You see many people with different jobs around you. You can see doctors, engineers, teachers, cleaners, etc. I want to write about an interesting job I like. It's my father's job. He is a teacher of English. He always says that his job is very interesting. He enjoys being with his students. They all love him so much. They say he is an excellent teacher. My father started his job before he got married. He has been a teacher for fifteen years. I'd like to be a teacher like him. He is my role model.

2- A biography of a person (Swimmer Ali Khalafalla)

The Egyptian Olympic swimmer Ali Khalafalla was born in Cairo in 1996. He is an Egyptian Olympic swimmer. He started swimming at the age of six. His parents always encourages him. He studied in the USA for three years. He is the fastest swimmer in the Egyptian history. He went to Rio Olympics in 2016. He swam at Tokyo Olympics in Japan in 2020. He is a role model for many Egyptian athletes. He did great achievements and won medals. He is the Egyptian champion who we are all proud of.

3- How can a campaigner help disabled people? (Magdy Abdel Sayed)

Magdy Abdel Sayed is an Egyptian campaigner. He is 29 years old and studied at the American University in Cairo. He was born with a disability. He makes great efforts to help disabled people in the Egyptian society. However, he works hard to achieve his goals in life. He won the Cambridge award in 2008. Although he is a person with a disability, he can do anything he wants in life. Youth should take him as a role model. They should follow their

dreams and try hard to achieve them. We are all proud of him.

Unit 6

1- What you must or mustn't do at school

My name is Hossam. I'm fifteen years old and I live in Cairo. There are many rules in my school! We mustn't listen to music. We mustn't run in the corridors. We mustn't eat in the classroom. We mustn't take our smartphones to school. We mustn't sleep during classes. But we must arrive at school on time. If we are late, the headmaster calls our parents. We must wear a uniform. We must listen to our teachers. We must be polite. We must do our homework. If we break the school rules, we are punished.

2- Teenagers' problems

We all agree that teenagers face a number of problems. They usually get worried about their exams. They feel embarrassed about failing an exam. They don't want to disappoint their parents. They find it difficult to study some subjects. They are usually worried about doing a lot of homework. They try to be careful about who they should make friends with. Teenagers usually have different opinions about things, too. That makes some of them feel lonely. Teenagers should know how to cope with their problems. They should try to meet up with each other. They should ask their parents or teachers for advice.

3- Ways to relax

Today's life is full of worries and stress. Between work, family, and study, it can be hard to make time for yourself. But it's important to find the time. Relaxing can help keep both your body and mind healthy. It helps you forget about the everyday problems that you face. Try to find ways to relax. This is good for your mental health. It's important to be friends with good people. You should meet up with them from time to time. You can join a sports club and practise a sport. This helps you to relax, too. You can go on holiday away from hard work from time to time. It is advisable to relax and enjoy your life.



Unit 1

1- A visit to Tanta

To : nadia22@yahoo.com
From : amira55@gmail.com
Subject : A visit to Tanta

Dear Nadia,

My mother and I are travelling to Tanta tomorrow. We have arranged to visit the Space Exhibition in Tanta. We are getting the first train. It leaves at 8.00 from Misr Station. It leaves from platform five. The last station that the train goes to is Tanta station. It arrives in Tanta at 11.00. That's half an hour before the exhibition starts! The exhibition finishes at 3 o'clock. Perhaps I will be able to see you then. After that, we are taking a train to get back. It leaves at 4.00 from Tanta Station. It arrives in Misr Station at 7.00. I hope it will be a nice day.

Yours,
Amira

2- A visit to El-Orman Gardens

To : reem99@gmail.com
From : azza19@yahoo.com
Subject : A visit to El-Orman Gardens

Hi Reem!

I'm looking forward to visiting El-Orman Gardens! I think it is very interesting to go there. My family and I are going there on Tuesday. I know that a famous French governor planted these gardens in the 19th century. The garden protect many important plants and trees. I'm looking forward to seeing plants, trees and flowers that grow nowhere else in Egypt. We are taking the bus to go there. It leaves at 9.00 am. It takes half an hour to get there. I'd like to see the wild flowers first. They look very interesting. We could go to a nearby café for lunch or we could bring food with us.

See you soon,
Azza

3- An invitation to an exhibition

To : alaa99@gmail.com
From : maher19@yahoo.com
Subject : An invitation to an exhibition

Hi Alaa!

My family and I are travelling to Luxor tomorrow. We are visiting a famous exhibition. Would you like to join us? We are travelling there by plane. It leaves at 9.00 from Cairo. It leaves from Cairo Airport. It arrives in Luxor at about 10.00. We will have two hours before the exhibition starts. We can visit the popular places then. The exhibition starts at 12.00. It finishes at 5 o'clock. After that, we are taking a plane to get back to Cairo. It leaves at 7.00

from Luxor Airport. It arrives in Cairo at about 8.00. I hope it will be a nice day.
See you soon.
Maher

Unit 2

- Help you buy some items from Egyptian handicrafts

To : hayam55@gmail.com
From : samar23@yahoo.com
Subject : Buying items from Egyptian handicrafts

Dear Hayam,

I really need you to help me buy some items from Egyptian handicrafts. I know you live near Khan El-Khalili and you know about Egyptian handicrafts. I want to get a beautiful wooden box. I need it for my mum's jewellery. I need it decorated with shells. I also need a leather bag and a pot. The leather bag must have soft leather. I need it purple. I know the artists paint the pots with traditional Arabic designs. Finally, I need to get a colourful, modern carpet. I'm sure it will look amazing in my home.

Yours faithfully,
Samar

Unit 3

- A project in your community.

To : doaa15@gmail.com
From : hana16@yahoo.com
Subject : A visit to Tanta

Dear Doaa,

I'm really proud of the Town Library. We all love it very much. However, it needs some work. The children don't like it anymore because it looks old and needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again. We plan to improve the building. We want to invite you to help us. We got some ideas from a nearby community project. We are going to send group of people to the library to paint the houses in beautiful colours. It will make it look exciting. Furthermore, we intend to make the library a tourist attraction. To conclude, we are looking for volunteers to help us complete the project.

Yours,
Hana

Unit 4

- Something you have achieved

To : alipost@yahoo.com
From : osamamail@yahoo.com
Subject : Something you have achieved

Dear Ali,

How are you and your family? I write this letter to tell you about something I have achieved. I was born in England. When I was a baby, my parents moved to Egypt. Before I started school, I learned to speak Arabic. It was nice to learn Arabic. Soon, I was able to read and write it well. When I started preparatory school, nobody knew that I was English! After my

thirteenth birthday, I went to England and visited my cousins who still live there. Last year, they came to visit me in Egypt. They love it here!
See you soon.
Yours
Osama

Unit 5

1- Responding to good news

To : osamareda@gmail.com
From : sameh8888@hotmail.com.
Subject : Responding to good news
Dear Osama,
How are you and your family? It was a pleasure receiving your email. I has got some good news for you. You have won an award. Well done! Great job! I'm really happy for you. You and your family did really something good to help children in a hospital. You really worked hard to make them happy. I hope to do something like that, too. I will come and see you get the award.
See you soon.
Yours,
Sameh

Unit 6

- Apologizing to a friend

To : fawzypost@hotmail.com
From : foad555@gmail.com
Subject : Apologizing
Dear Fawzy,
How are you and your family? I write to you to say sorry about what happened at school today. I have to say that I made a mistake. I didn't mean to make you angry with me. My friends and I suggested that we cyberbully a boy in my class. So I wrote an unkind comment about you on social media. I thought that my friends would think it was funny. I didn't realise that they were joking, and I was the only one to write an unkind comment. I had to tell my parents. I am so embarrassed about what I did. I won't do what my friends suggest. Sorry again.
Yours,
Foad

Additional Exercises

أسئلة وتمارين إضافية على الكلمات والقواعد اللغوية

Fill in the spaces with the correct words from the box

1 on - monuments - historical - botanical - in

My name is Ramy. I live ❶ .... Giza with my family. There are some ❷ .... gardens near our house. Giza is a ❸ .... city with lots of famous buildings and ❹ ....

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

2 environment - best - better - transport - electric

Many people use the tram to travel around Alexandria. Trams are ❶ .... so they are ❷ .... for the ❸ .... than other types of ❹ .... They're a great way to travel! They're easy to use and they aren't expensive.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

3 takes - arrive - more - open - wild

We'll go to the El-Orman Gardens! The gardens ❶ .... at 9 am, and it ❷ .... about an hour to get there by car. It's interesting to see ❸ .... flowers there. For me, It's ❹ .... interesting to visit the gardens than the museum.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

4 kitchen - present - use - with - on

I bought this kettle as a ❶ .... for my parents. They are very happy ❷ .... it. It looks great in their ❸ .... and it is easy to ❹ .... It also makes a really delicious cup of coffee. The delivery was quick, too!

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

5 were - wooden - was - coast - decorated

Yesterday, I went to the market and I bought these beautiful ❶ .... boxes. They are used for jewellery. They are ❷ .... with shells in traditional designs. They ❸ .... made by artists near the ❹ ....

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

6 turned - battery - plugged - making - doing

I bought a laptop last week. Yesterday, it was ❶ .... in. I was charging the ❷ .... while I was ❸ .... my homework. But, it suddenly ❹ .... off. I think I lost my work!

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

7 have – experiences – played – snorkelled – has

I asked the people in my family about their ❶ .... Most of them ❷ .... travelled by plane. Not many people have ❸ .... a musical instrument, but my cousin Osama has ❹ .... in the Red Sea.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

8 deaf – hearing – starts - sign – started

Dareen has had ❶ .... problems all her life and she learnt ❷ .... language from when she was a baby. When she first ❸ .... school, she went to a special school for ❹ .... children.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

9 have – music – playing – has – concerts

When Hossam was eight, he started ❶ .... the piano. He ❷ .... played in many ❸ .... He loves ❹ .... Two years ago, he played at a concert in the Cairo Opera House. It was amazing.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

10 team – is – meetings – has – manager - meetings

My friend Ali ❶ .... got a very important job. He's the ❷ .... of a ❸ .... of people and they have ❹ .... every day. He works very hard.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

11 astronaut - finished - be - engineering - been

Samar Abdelfattah has always ❶ .... interested in space. As a young child, she wanted to be an ❷ .... After she ❸ .... school, she went to Cairo University to study space ❹ ....

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

12 dream - app - create - volunteer - created

Maha would like to ❶ .... to teach writing and music to children one day. Her other ❷ .... is to ❸ .... an ❹ .... to help children learn.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

13 understand - have to - negative - has to - mindfulness

In ❶ .... classes, we learn that it's OK to have ❷ .... thoughts, like when we feel angry. We don't ❸ .... feel bad about that. It helps me to ❹ .... my feelings.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

14 health - appearance - about - negative - positive

I'm worried ❶ .... my friend. He is so unhappy about his ❷ .... How can I help him feel more ❸ .... about himself? It's really bad about his mental ❹ ....

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

15 has to - play - broke - had to - do

Sally ❶ .... go to hospital after she ❷ .... her leg. She couldn't ❸ .... any sport until her leg was better. Her leg is better now, and yesterday she was able to ❹ .... tennis with me.

Answer 1- .... 2- .... 3- .... 4- ....

Additional Exercises

16 **started - starting - pavements - difference - activities**

1. There are lots of sports .... for young people in the clubs.
2. These wide .... are for disabled people to help them travel around.
3. We're .... a project next month to help the elderly learn about technology.
4. Sports facilities make a .... to millions of young people.

17 **surprised - bench - facilities - surprising - elderly**

1. There are so many local .... for people of all ages.
2. We help the .... to learn about the latest technology.
3. You might be .... to know that 70% of villagers in Egypt are very poor.
4. Our street has a big .... to sit on for a rest.

18 **graffiti - attraction - builders - go to - going to**

1. We are going to get some .... to repair the walls.
2. This castle is going to become a tourist ....
3. The .... on this wall is amazing.
4. The community centre is .... be closed on Friday.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the world's most amazing landmarks. The pyramid was such an amazing work of engineering that it has remained the tallest structure in the world for over 3,800 years! Most Egyptologists, scientists who study ancient Egypt, agree that the Great Pyramid was built around 2,560 BC, a little more than 4,500 years ago. It took tens of thousands of workers twenty years to build. The pyramid contains over two million stone blocks. Although most of the blocks weigh two or three tons, some weigh up to eighty tons! The Great Pyramid of Giza was built by the Pharaoh Khufu as an amazing tomb. The Great Pyramid of Giza is the last remaining of the seven wonders of the world.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- How are Egyptologists?

....

2- How many stone blocks make up the Great Pyramid?

....

3- How many wonders were there in the world?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Most of the blocks in the pyramid weigh about .... tons.

a 5 b 4 c 6 d 2 or 3

5- The Great Pyramid was built as a ....

a house b palace c park d tomb

6- The Great Pyramid took .... years to build.

a twenty b thirty c forty d fifty

In most countries, people like to keep certain animals as pets. In England, people like dogs. In Malaysia, the most popular animals are dogs and birds. A lot of people, especially in South-East Asia, keep monkeys and some few people keep snakes. In European countries, children like white mice, although their parents do not like keeping them. The easiest pets to keep are cats because they are clean and can take care of

themselves. Birds are often beautiful and some of them sing well, but they need a lot of care. They must have special food and fresh water every day. Some people keep fish although a fish is not really a pet. A pet is something we can touch with our hands or talk to. Dolphins are pets but can't be kept at homes. They need a lot of water and eat large amounts of fish. If you don't have a pet, you should think about it because sometimes pets are as good as a good friend.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What are the most popular animals in Malaysia?

2- Why isn't it difficult to keep a cat?

3- Is it easy to keep dolphins at home? Why?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a Cats b Dolphins c Birds d Dogs

5- Snakes are popular in ....

a England b Malaysia c Europe d Asia

6- People should think about having a pet because pets ....

a eat a lot of fish

b can't take care of themselves

c are sometimes as good as a good friend

d are famous

Do you have a computer at home? Do you use the internet? I'm sure the answer is "Yes". I can't believe there is a house without a computer in our modern age. Computer users **increase** every day at a very high rate. But why?

The computer is a world where you can fly anywhere and everywhere. Through the computer, you can play games, store information, write what you want in any language and print it out.

You can also use the internet through the computer. The internet is a great source of knowledge in all fields. You can learn about medicine, engineering, health and so many other sciences. It can also help us communicate with people in any part of the world.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- How do computers help us?

....

2- Can we use the internet without computers?

....

3- Do you use the internet every day? Why?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The internet is ....

a useful b useless c boring d interested

5- The underlined word "increase" mostly means ....

a become more b become weaker c become fewer d become healthier

6- Medicine and engineering are ....

a materials b sciences c forms d buildings

My name us Mahmoud. I love TV. The first thing I do when I wake up is to switch it on. My favourite channel is the Cartoon Network.

I watch TV three to four hours a day. My parents think it is too much and they always tell me to do something else like studying, reading or doing a sport, but TV is my favourite hobby and I don't feel like doing anything else. Of course I know that my marks at school would be better if I concentrated more on schoolwork and took more time to do my homework. I guess I'm addicted to my favourite programmmes. Anyway, I have already promised my parents to watch less TV every day. I guess I'll have to go to bed earlier.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What is Mahmoud's favourite channel?

....

2- What has Mahmoud promised his parents to do?

....

3- Do you like to watch TV? Why / Why not?

....

Reading Comprehension

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Mahmoud's parents think he watches .... TV.

a) too much b) too little c) too heavy d) too far

5- He likes to watch ....

a) the news b) football matches c) plays d) children's films

6- Mahmoud's parents advise him to do .... things.

a) useless b) useful c) bad d) terrible

A zoo is a place where many animals and birds live. They live in the closed areas in the zoo and the visitors can see the animals from the outside of the spaces. There are people who take care of the zoo provide the animals and birds with the best care. The zookeepers make sure that the animals or the visitors of the zoo are not hurt in any way.

Zoos are one of the most favourite places for the kids to visit on any holiday. It gives a chance to see the animals which we read in books and watch in videos about them. Children as well as adults can learn a lot about the animals and birds at the zoo.

The zookeepers make sure that visitors don't offer any food to the animals or birds. The food may make the animals sick. So, visitors shouldn't try to feed the animals because it may be harmful for **them**. The zookeepers provide proper food for all the animals. This food is prepared according to the needs of the animals. When the animals are given proper food, they are healthy.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where can people learn about the animals and birds?

....

2. What can live in the zoo?

....

3. Why shouldn't visitors try to feed the animals?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The people who take care of the zoo are the ....

a) animals b) birds c) visitors d) zookeepers

5. At the zoo, it is a good chance to see the animals which you watch in ....

a) streets b) walls c) videos d) houses

6. The underlined word **"them"** refers to the ....

a) animals b) people c) zookeepers d) visitors

In England, people know that autumn arrived when apples began to turn red in early September. Both red and golden apples are delicious. All through September and October the smell of apples fills the air on sunny days. You can get a fresh smell of apples and enjoy autumn scenery.

The picking is best done by adults. Children shouldn't climb up on trees and risk hurting themselves and damaging the trees. The picking may not take long time just two hours at most. Many people like to watch the apple picking event as it is very interesting and they enjoy seeing fresh apples with their different colours. Young children also like to watch this event. Some young children work in collecting apples although sometimes there are dangerous accidents when some of them fall while jumping in the collecting act.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. How do people know that autumn arrives?

....

2. What two colours are in the passage?

....

3. Give title to the passage.

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Smell of apples fills air through ....

a April   b May   c September   d June

5. Apples are best picked by ....

a adults   b young people   c children   d women

6. Apples turn.............. in September.

a green   b red   c golden   d fellow

Trees are the best gift of nature for us. They make the environment beautiful and clean. Water and sunlight are very important to help trees grow.

Trees can be called the best friend to mankind. People get food from trees. Many animals get their food from leaves, vegetables and fruits grown on trees. They also live near the shadow of trees. We should stop cutting down trees to save nature. They take in sunlight, carbon dioxide and water to produce oxygen which helps to support all forms of life on earth.

Reading Comprehension

Wood from trees is used in many industries to make paper, furniture and other goods of daily use. As a result, a large number of trees are cut down every day to cover these needs.

Trees also give us wood and shade. Houses, chairs and toys are made from wood we get from trees. Different kinds of trees can be found which provide us materials for food, clothing and medicines.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why are trees helpful to people?

....

2. How do trees produce oxygen?

....

3. What can people and animals get from trees?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. We .... cut down trees to protect the environment.

a should   b must   c can   d shouldn't

5. A .... number of trees are cut down every day to cover people's needs.

a small   b large   c tiny   d few

6. People and animals breathe in ....

a sunlight   b water   c oxygen   d carbon dioxide

The camel is called the ship of the desert because it has the ability to stay alive in the desert without food and water for six to ten days. They are able to stand the loss of about one third of their body liquid without danger. Its nose, ears and eyes are formed in such a way that they are least affected by the dust of the desert. It is a very useful animal for the desert travellers and can carry enormous loads. It is commonly believed that a camel does not need food very regularly, but this is not correct. Because of its advantage of its body it can store food and water for many days.

The camel has a big hump on its back. As a matter of fact, this hump is a store house of fats. The camel uses the fat so stored as a source of energy during its long journey in the desert. When <u>it</u> does not get water it uses the stored water in its body.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How long can a camel stay alive without food and water?

....

2. Where does a camel store its food and water?

....

3. Why is a camel called the 'ship of the desert'?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The camel can carry very .... things.

a heavy b tiny c small d light

5. The camel can .... food and water for many days in its body.

a steal b start c study d store

6. The underlined word **"it"** refers to the ....

a camel b desert c energy d gourney

People love football. It is the most popular sport in the world. Many people all over the world like it. They also like to follow and support different teams according to their interests in each team.

It was the World Cup football final between England and Germany. It seemed certain that England would win. There were only two minutes left and England was leading by two goals to one. The German team has scored first but England has soon equalized and a quarter of an hour later, Peter had given them the lead by scoring the second goal. At this very moment, the referee has just blown his whistle. England won the match by two goals to one goal for Germany.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do many people love football?

....

2. What's your favourite team?

....

3. Who won the match?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

4. England played against ....

a France b Germany c Japan d Egypt

5. England scored .... goals.

a one b three c two d four

6. .... scored first.

a England b France c Egypt d Germany



End of Term Practice



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the speaker going to do today?
   - a take people to a nature reserve
   - b give directions to an information centre
   - c explain some facts about animals and birds
   - d find some water for the visiters
2. How do they get to the information centre?
   - a turn left and go past an old building
   - b turn left and go right at an old building
   - c turn right and go past an old building
   - d turn right onto a big road
3. What haven't they seen at the nature reserve this year?
   - a any birds
   - b smaller birds
   - c larger birds
   - d any water
4. What must people take with them?
   - a food
   - b enough water
   - c phones
   - d sun hats

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad and Adam are talking about their plans for the weekend.

Ziad : Hi, Adam. This is my older cousin, Hany.

Adam : ❶ ...., Hany. What are you doing next weekend?

Ziad : We're going to the park ❷ ....?

Adam : I'm not sure about that. There are some boys in t he park and...

Ziad : ❸ .... It might be good to talk about it. you know.

Adam : ❹ ....

Hany : Unkind comments! That must have made you feel very sad.

Adam : ❺ .... But I told the officers at the park, and they talked to the boys about that.

Ziad : ❻ ....?

Adam : The boys said sorry to me the next day. But I still don't want to go to the park.

Hany: : You mustn't feel bad anymore. I'm sure they won't do it again.

3 Read the text. Then answer the questions:

You probably have a fridge in your house to keep your food cool, but have you ever thought about what people did in the past? People have used ice to keep food cool for thousands of years. In the north of Europe in winter, people were able to use snow or ice, which they kept underground for many months. In 1842, an American doctor called John Gorrie invented a machine to make ice. He used it to keep people cool when they got an illness called yellow fever. By 1900, places that sold meat in the USA started to have fridges and today, nearly all homes in the USA have a fridge in their kitchens.

We continue to use the same technology for fridges that we have used for a century. The problem is that a room with a fridge in it is a lot noisier and hotter than other rooms! Now people are designing modern fridges that are neither hot nor noisy. These are going to use less energy, too, so they will be more efficient.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What two problems do fridges cause?

....

2. Why do you think that places that sold meat started to have fridges by 1900?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. John Gorrie invented a machine that ....

a made people ill. b made ice. c kept food cool.

4. Modern fridges are going to ....

a make more noise b use less energy c look better

5. What do you think the word efficient means?

a expensive b cheap c work well and quickly

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We saw some beautiful trees in the .... gardens.

a botanical b passenger c smart d elderly

2. Fatima worked hard to clean the dirty water, and the .... were amazing

a competitions b results c teams d organisers

3. The parents knew that the children were .... because they heard them talking.

a awesome b delicious c awake d sleeping

4. My grandmother is very .... She always knows how I feel.

a upset b positive
c understanding d embarrassed

5. Only Ali's cousin knew the way to the park, so we all .... him there.

a took b went c got d followed

6. We .... take the bus to the museum, we could take a tram or a train, too.

a mustn't b don't have to c shouldn't d might not

7. You don't have to buy any bread today because I .... so me.

a bought already b have already bought

c have yet bought d yet bought

8. I like .... the blue shirt and the green shirt. Which should I buy?

a either b both c neither d nor

9. I was very .... to see my cousin this morning because I thought she was in Jordan!

a surprise b surprising c surprised d sur prises

10. The first bus to the museum .... at 9.30 am every day.

a is leaving b leave c leaves d leaving

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. The work that the volunteers do can really **do** a difference to our community. (..........)
2. People were surprised by the **kind** of Mr Nader. He helps everybody he knows. (..........)
3. My parents have lived in the same house **when** 2012. (..........)
4. The computer isn't working because it is not plugged **on**! (..........)

6 Choose one of the following. Write about 100 words:

Write an article on some traditional Egyptian handicrafts you like.

Write an email to a friend suggesting how you could help your community.

....